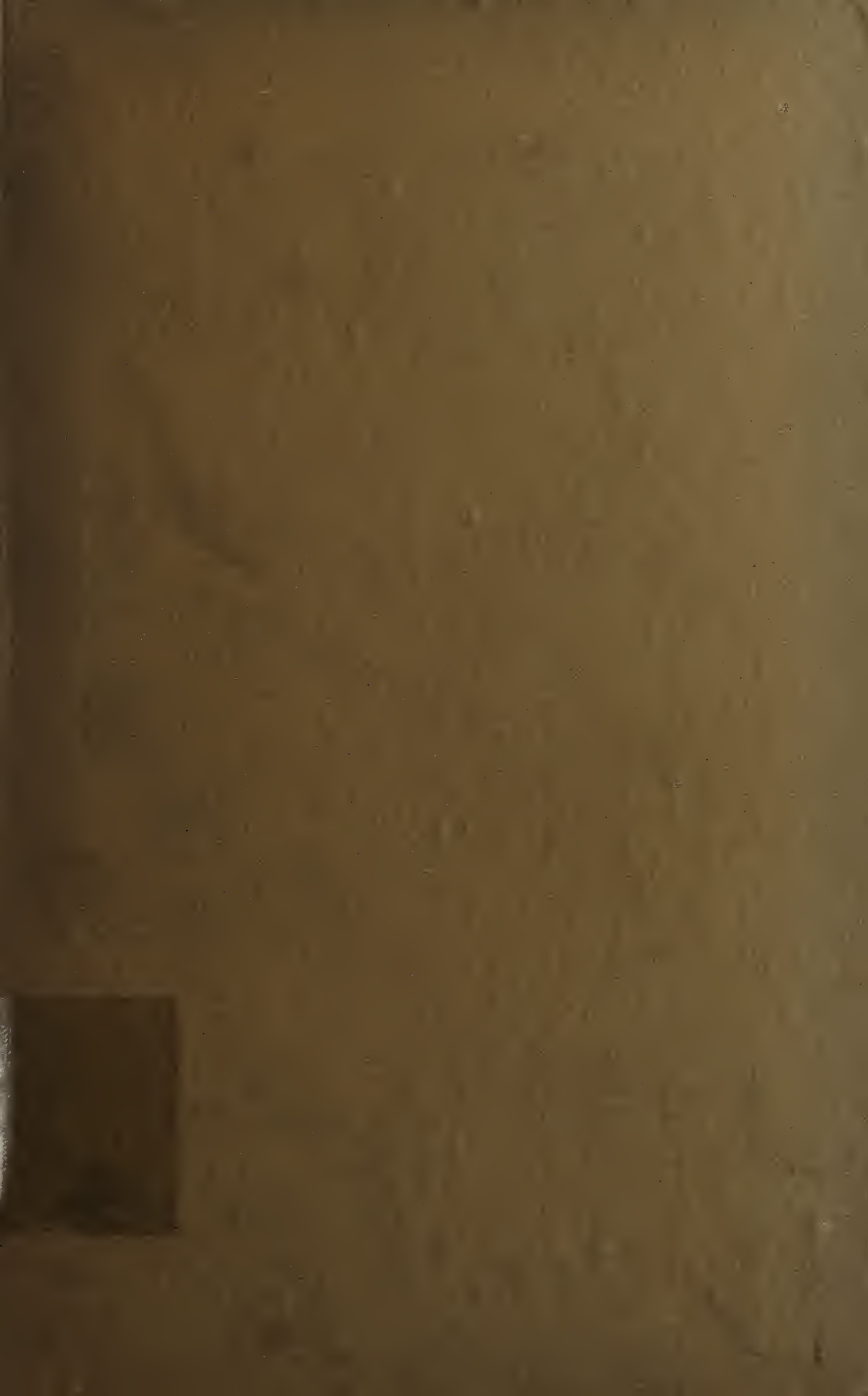






BX 3601 .B74 v.11
Glassberger, Nicolaus, d.
1508.
Nicholaus Glassberger and
his works

BRITISH
SOCIETY OF FRANCISCAN STUDIES
VOL. XI

British Society of Franciscan Studies

Hon. President—PAUL SABATIER

Chairman—A. G. LITTLE

Hon. Secretary—WALTER W. SETON

Volumes already issued :

- I. Liber Exemplorum. Ed. A. G. Little. 1908.
- II. Fr. Johannis Pecham Tractatus Tres de Paupertate. Ed. C. L. Kingsford, A. G. Little, F. Tocco. 1910.
- III. Fr. Rogeri Bacon Compendium Studii Theologiæ. Ed. H. Rashdall. 1911.
- IV. Part of the Opus Tertium of Roger Bacon. Ed. A. G. Little. 1912.
- V. Collectanea Franciscana I. Ed. A. G. Little, M. R. James, H. M. Bannister. 1914.
- VI. The Grey Friars of London. By C. L. Kingsford. 1915.
- VII. Some New Sources for the Life of the Blessed Agnes of Bohemia. Ed. W. W. Seton. 1915.
- VIII. Blessed Giles of Assisi. By W. W. Seton. 1918.
- IX. Materials for the History of the Franciscan Province of Ireland, 1230–1450. By the late Rev. Father E. B. Fitzmaurice, O.F.M., and A. G. Little. 1920.
- X. Collectanea Franciscana II. Ed. C. Cotton, M. Deanesly, J. P. Gilson, M. R. James, C. L. Kingsford, A. G. Little. 1922.
- XI. Nicholas Glassberger and his Works. By W. W. Seton.

EXTRA SERIES

- I. Franciscan Essays. By Paul Sabatier and others. 1912.

Volumes in preparation :

The Grey Friars of Canterbury. By C. Cotton.

The Medical Treatises of Roger Bacon. By A. G. Little and E. Withington.

¶ *Volumes are supplied to members only, Subscription 10s. 6d. a year*

HON. SECRETARY AND TREASURER :

WALTER W. SETON,

University College, London, Gower Street, London, W.C.

MANCHESTER / / / THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

23 LIME GROVE

NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER AND HIS WORKS

With the text of his

MAIOR CRONICA BOEMORUM MODERNA
(A.D. 1200-1310)

By

WALTER SETON



MANCHESTER: THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

1923

To
JOHN RICHARD GAMMELL
and
MARK EVERARD PEPYS,
EARL of COTTENHAM
a token of gratitude for
1919-1923

University College Hall
Midsummer 1923

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Summary of Abbreviations.	viii
Chapter I. NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER. HIS LIFE AND HIS FRIENDS.	ix
His birth—His education at Leipzig University—His association with Hartmann Schedel—Nuremberg as a humanistic centre—The religious atmosphere of Nuremberg in the XVth century.	
Chapter II. NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER AND HIS WORKS.	xxi
Discussion of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals: of the <i>Trilogium Animae</i> ; of the Chronicle of the Order; of the <i>Maior Cronica</i> ; of MS. 1191, Munich; of the dedication of the <i>Maior Cronica</i> .	
Chapter III. NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER'S SOURCES.	xxx
Text of Brünn MS., Ceroni Collection No. 292.	I
Appendix. Bibliography.	110
Index.	112

ILLUSTRATIONS

	<i>Face page</i>
I. Nicholas Glassberger's Handwriting, in Hall Chronicle of the XXIV Generals, folio 235.	xxii
II. Nicholas Glassberger's Handwriting in Brünn MS. 292, folio 115; and in Vienna MS. 13671, folio 29 v.	xxxviii

SUMMARY of ABBREVIATIONS

A.F.	<i>Analecta Franciscana</i> (Collegium S. Bonaventurae, Quaracchi).
A.R.C.G.	Andreas von Regensburg. <i>Chronicon Generale</i> . Ed. Pez. Vol. IV. 1723.
C.H.	<i>Chronica Hungarorum</i> (otherwise <i>Chronicon Budense</i>). Ed. Podhradczky. Buda. 1838.
Clm.	<i>Codex Latinus Monacensis</i> .
C.M.M.E.	<i>Cronica Minor Minoritae Erphordensis</i> . Ed. O. Holder-Egger.
C.N.G.	<i>Chronica Fratris Nicolai Glassberger</i> .
C.R.	<i>Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis</i> . Ed. F. X. Wegele.
C.S.P.E.M.	<i>Cronica Sancti Petri Erfordensis Moderna</i> . Ed. O. Holder-Egger.
E.R.B.	<i>Erben, Regesta Diplomatica Bohemica</i> .
F.R.B.	<i>Fontes Rerum Bohemicarum</i> . Ed. J. Emler.
H.A.A.	<i>Hermannii Alahensis Annales</i> . Ed. Pertz.
H.S.	Hartmann Schedel.
N.G.	Nicholas Glassberger.
P.SS.	Pertz. <i>Scriptores</i> .
SS.R.G.	<i>Scriptores Rerum Germanicarum</i> .
U.C.	<i>Urspergensium Chronicon</i> .

NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER

Chapter I

HIS LIFE AND HIS FRIENDS

NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER is little known even by name outside the circle of those who care for the study of the Order founded by Saint Francis. Born as he was more than two centuries after the death of the founder of his Order, he has never possessed the interest or attractiveness of those who, at the dawn of the thirteenth century, by the simplicity, the sincerity, the romanticism of their life and works summoned the Church to a spiritual Crusade. Of Nicholas Glassberger comparatively little indeed is known; there is no portrait of him: no contemporary has given us a pen-picture of him; but he lives and will live in the history of the Franciscans by reason of his writings, for he has compiled a Chronicle of first-class importance giving an account of the Order from its foundation right down to his own times.

The object of the present study is a double one. First of all, it is to gather together and re-examine the scattered information about Glassberger's life, to show the surroundings in which he lived and wrote, and, if possible, to add some fresh facts—or theories—about his life. Secondly, it is to publish for the first time as a Franciscan document a Chronicle of Bohemia, hitherto scarcely known and not previously identified as the composition of Glassberger, indeed his autograph work.

Up to the present the date of birth of Nicholas Glassberger is unknown, and the earliest event in his life, for which a fixed date has been hitherto known, is his reception into the Order of Friars Minor of the Regular Observance, which, according to his own statement,¹ took place on 3rd May, 1472, at Amberg. An examina-

¹ A.F. ii, 452.

tion, however, of the Matriculation Registers and Graduation Records of the University of Leipsig, admirably edited by Erler,¹ yields information which may throw light upon his earlier years before he entered Religion. Between the years 1424 and 1524 seven students of the name Glassberger—or some obvious variant of it—can be traced at Leipsig. They are as follows :

1. 1424. Winter Semester. Nycolaus Glasberg de Lesnicz. Matriculated.
1426. Summer Semester. Nycolaus Glasberg de Lesnicz. Bachelor's Degree.
2. 1456. S.S. Nicolaus Glassberg de Friberg. Matriculated.
3. Lodewicus Glassberg de Friberg. Matriculated.
1458. S.S. Nicolaus Glassberg de Friberg. Bachelor's Degree.
- Lodewicus Glassberg de Friberg. Bachelor's Degree.
4. 1461. S.S. Johannes Glaseberg de Friberga. Matriculated.
1462. S.S. Johannes Glosberg de Friberga. Bachelor's Degree.
1465. W.S. Johannes Glassberk de Friberga. Master's Degree.
5. 1477. S.S. Nicolaus Glassperg. Matriculated.
1482. S.S. Nicolaus Glossperck de Friberga. Bachelor's Degree.
6. 1487. S.S. Ieronimus Glasberch de Friberga. Matriculated.
7. 1524. S.S. Christophorus Gasperck Annemontanus. Matriculated.

The students in the University of Leipsig were divided into four " Nations "—viz. : Misnenses, Saxones, Bavari, and Poloni. The " Misnenses " were those to whom

¹ Matrikel der Univ. Leipsig, 3 vols., 1895.

Leipzig was in a sense the home University: they included those who were subjects of the Markgraves of Meissen or of the Landgraves of Thüringen. Now every one of these seven Glassbergers is classified as "Misnensis," while five came from Freiberg. From this it is safe to infer that there was a Glassberger family which frequented the University of Leipzig, that their home was Freiberg, and that Nicholas was a family name. Moreover the Freiberg records contain confirmatory evidence as to a Glasberg or Glasberger family in Freiberg. In the *Mittheilungen der Freiburger Alterthumsverein* (2 Heft., p. 81) Gustav Bursian, discussing the chief Freiberg families, says that the Glasberg family acquired wealth through mining and derived their name from "Glaserz," a very fine silver ore. One Stephen Glasberg became Burgermeister of Freiberg in 1460, and had a son, Hieronymus, who died in 1472. Going on the basis of dates we are tempted to identify the Nicolaus Glassberg, who entered the University in 1456 with our chronicler. Against this it must be remembered that Nicholas Glassberger's own account of himself in the Ceroni MS. 292 (Brünn), of which more anon, is that he was born in Bohemia and educated in Moravia; and in his Chronicle he states that in 1479 he visited his parents, then at Olmütz. It is usual, but not quite invariable, in the Leipzig registers to find the place which is entered after a student's name to be his birthplace; and if the student who entered in 1456 is our Nicholas Glassberger, it might be expected that he would be entered as "of Olmütz," and that he would be classified as "Polonus," not as "Misnensis." The name Glassberger is a German name, not a Czech name. I hesitate to identify the Leipzig matriculant of 1456 with our chronicler, but I suggest as a tenable hypothesis that he may be the same; that he may have belonged to a branch of the family which had emigrated to Moravia; that he was sent to Leipzig, because others of his family had been there; that he was classified as "of Freiberg"

and as "Misnensis," because the family was well known in both connections.¹

Possibly "Lodewicus," who matriculated and graduated along with him, was a brother. But this is mere conjecture.

This hypothetical identification of Nicholas Glassberger with the Leipsig student of 1456-1458 derives considerable support from another fact which emerges from the examination of the Leipsig records—viz.: the association of the Schedel family with that University. Later on, evidence will be brought to show the intimate connection which must have existed between Nicholas Glassberger and the great humanist, Hartmann Schedel, best known nowadays as the author of the Nuremberg Chronicle. Here we are on more solid ground, for the story of the Schedel family has been thoroughly worked out by Dr. Richard Stauber and Dr. Otto Hartig in their scholarly work, "Die Schedelsche Bibliothek."² There were four members of that family at Leipsig :

1. 1433. S.S. Hermannus Schedel de Noremberg.
Matriculated.
1435. W.S. Hermannus Schedel de Noremberga.
Bachelor's Degree. This was Hartmann Schedel's cousin.
2. 1455. W.S. Hartmann Schedel. Matriculated.
1457. W.S. Hartmann Schedel. Bachelor's Degree.
1459. W.S. Hartmann Schedel. Master's Degree.
3. 1464. W.S. Johannes Schedel de Nurenberga.
Matriculated. This was Hartmann's younger brother.

¹ It is, moreover, not impossible that the Glasberger family in Meissen was of Czech origin, notwithstanding the name. The political influence of Bohemia in the Markgravate of Meissen was great for many centuries. This subject is examined in detail by Pelcel in an article "Ueber die Herrschaft der Böhmen in Meissen" (Abhandl. der Böhm. Gesellsch. der Wissenschaften, 1787, p. 39).

² Studien und Darstellungen aus dem Gebiete der Geschichte. VI Band. Freiburg im B, 1908.

4. 1504. W.S. Anthonius Schedel de Nuremberga. Matriculated. This was Hartmann's fourth son, born April 2, 1490.

It will be seen that Hartmann Schedel's dates at Leipsig, 1455-59, overlap those of Nicolaus Glassberg de Friberga, 1456-58. It appears probable that the close connection between Nicholas Glassberger and Hartmann Schedel began in the University of Leipsig.

H. S.¹ was born at Nuremberg on February 13, 1440, and was thus fifteen when he matriculated. If Nicholas Glassberger¹ matriculated in 1456, he was born, probably, in 1440 or 1441. These dates fit in quite well with the ascertained dates of death. H. S. died on November 28, 1514. N. G. died in 1508, as appears from the Necrology of the Province of Strassburg.² Boehmer is thus mistaken in asserting that N.G. finished his Chronicle in April 1509 at Nuremberg.³

The friendship which thus began, as we suppose, in College days, did not end then. Like many another College friendship it continued throughout life, and the circles of the two friends touched at intervals. We know nothing as to N.G.'s life during the years which immediately preceded his admission to the Franciscan Order in 1472 at Amberg. We know that H. S. was at the University of Padua from 1463-1466, following in the footsteps of his cousin Hermann, who had been there from 1439 to 1443; from 1466 to 1470 he was home at Nuremberg; in 1470 he went as a physician to Nordlingen, remained there till 1476, and then went to Amberg, where he stayed till about 1480. Of N. G. we know that in

¹ From this point Hartmann Schedel will, for the sake of brevity, be called H.S., while Nicholas Glassberger will be N.G.

² A.F.H. ii, 1909, 673; A.F. vi, 264, lin. 22. The Bamberg Bayer. Staatsbibliothek contains a "Calendarium emortuale Div. Francisci Noribergensis" recording burials from 1228-1521, but it does not contain any record of the death and burial of Nicholas Glassberger, which I had hoped to find.

³ Chron. Frat. Jord. xxxi note.

1475-76 he was at Bâle for purposes of study, but in 1479 he also was again in Amberg—thus both N. G. and H. S. were in Amberg in 1479. A little later on N. G. was apparently in Munich; in 1483 he reached Nuremberg, where he remained for the rest of his life. Thus for a quarter of a century, viz., from 1483-1508, N. G. and H. S. spent the evening of their days in Nuremberg. H. S. lived in the world, practising his profession as a physician, and, as we know from his books of prescriptions which are still extant, including among his patients the Religious of his native city. N. G. lived in the Franciscan house.¹ It is, perhaps, somewhat surprising that N. G. makes not a single reference in any of his known works to H. S., or to any member of the Schedel family; nor do I know of any reference made by H. S. to N. G. In one place, in a MS. formerly belonging to, and probably written by, Hermann Schedel (Codex lat. Monacensis 400, folio 69), and later, in the collection of H. S., there is an allusion to “mag. Glasperck” as having taken his Master’s degree, at Leipsig, in 1466, but this is presumably Johannes Glassberk.²

The key to the connection between N. G. and H. S. was found quite unexpectedly. I was examining Codex latinus Monacensis 476, which had been courteously lent to me by the authorities of the Staatsbibliothek, Munich, as I had already observed that there must be some definite connection between that MS. and the Brunn MS., containing N. G.’s *Maior Cronica Boemorum*. The large armorial book-plate, “*Ex Bibliotheca Serenissimorum Vtriusque Bauarie Ducum 1618*,” had become loose, and lifting it up, I found an inscription.³ “*Liber*

¹ See Addendum on p. lix.

² Hartig. Die Sch. Bibliothek, p. 19 note.

³ It was of course well known to the authors of *Die Schedelsche Bibliothek* that this MS. was one of H. S.’s; but it was unknown to me and I had not borrowed it as being a Schedel MS. My point is that this was the first evidence of Nicholas Glassberger using Schedel MSS.

doctoris Hartmanni Schedel de Nuremberga." Later, I found H. S.'s name and handwriting in various other places in the volume. The position of H. S. as an owner, collector, and transcriber of MSS. is so well known that the question became inevitable ; if N. G. borrowed from H. S. one MS. which was his chief source for his *Maior Cronica*, may he not have borrowed others, either for that Chronicle or for his other works ? The answer to that question will be found in the chapter on the Sources of N.G., where it is shown how over and over again N.G. is drawing upon MSS. which were in the Schedel Library.

The discovery as to N. G.'s use of Schedel MSS. is interesting from what may be called the lower critical standpoint ; that is to say, it satisfies our curiosity as to the actual documents used by N. G., and it often shows his methods of work. The more important aspect of the matter is, however, the one which might be called the higher critical aspect.

First of all, by showing to how great an extent N. G. was a copyist and not an original author, by proving how consistently he used documents of greater age and superior authority, he heightens his own reputation—not as a writer of skill, but as a trustworthy repository of important older sources.

In the second place, N. G. is now placed in his proper environment and we find him not as an isolated individual, but as one in close association with the men who were the leaders of Humanism at the end of the XVth century in Southern Germany. Boehmer has touched on this subject in his useful, but not always very accurate account of N. G. in his "*Chronica Fratris Jordani.*" "Glassberger lived," says Boehmer, "for many years in closest relations with the best society of Nuremberg. He formed links with all those families which have made the glory of Nuremberg, families for which the genius of the great artists, Dürer, Krafft, Stoss, Vischer worked, and to which the eloquence of the great humanists did

homage. But it would appear that for Glassberger the Renaissance of Nuremberg had no existence; and yet he was for a long while confessor to Charitas Pirckheimer, and for some years companion of John Pirckheimer the elder. The subtleties of scholastic theology interested Glassberger more than the great questions which moved this aristocratic society; an indulgence of the Pope had more value for him than all the masterpieces with which the Dürers, the Wohlgemuts, and the Vischers were then adorning Nuremberg." In this criticism of N.G. there is some justice, but it is too highly coloured, and too dogmatic. There is little or no evidence—except of a negative character—to show that N. G. was so lacking in interest for the great humanistic influences which surrounded him, as Boehmer suggests. We still know comparatively little of the life of N. G. The works associated with his name are of a semi-professional character and left little scope for the display of any wide interest in the new culture of his times, which he may have possessed. But those works of his which we do possess show a by no means inconsiderable range of interests and an acquaintance with a number of the best sources then available, of History, both of Germany and of neighbouring states, of Geography, of Theology, and of scholastic Philosophy.

During the fifteenth century Nuremberg was a centre of literary and historical activity, and the religious houses made their contribution towards the revival of learning which was taking place there as elsewhere. The Franciscans of Nuremberg, in the time of N. G., must have possessed an extensive and useful library. Fortunately, we know something as to this Library, for there is still extant in the Staatsarchiv at Nuremberg a manuscript catalogue¹ of their Library, which is not later than 1448. In that year the Library contained over three

¹ VI, 104-i, No. 3740, which has been carefully transcribed for me by Dr. Reicke (of the Städtisches Archiv) and his son. I hope to publish this catalogue later.

hundred manuscript volumes. It is interesting to find in the catalogue works of the Fathers, such as S. Augustine, Gregory the Great, and Origen; and Classics, such as Seneca's Letters, Ovid's Metamorphoses, and Sallust. In the House of Poor Clares, too, some of the sisters were engaged in the copying of manuscripts, and the Royal Library of Bamberg now contains MSS. which were written in the late XIVth or early XVth century by Poor Clares of Nuremberg, and which, after being in the possession of the Convent of Banz, ultimately found their way to Bamberg. A great impetus must have been given to learning in Nuremberg by the settlement there of H. S. about 1480. Throughout his long life he never lost the inspiration which he gained during his sojourn in Padua; he had returned to his home as an apostle of the new learning, but he had the wisdom and balance of character which led him to retain in his interests and affections all that was best in the old learning also. If H. S. placed his own library at the disposal of his friends, he on his part made continual use of the Manuscript resources of the Libraries of the various religious houses, with which he had links of professional practice or of friendship. Thus while H. S. was at Amberg, he copied MSS. from the monastic Library at Reichenbach, as we are told by Æfele: ¹

“ Illud Hartmannus Schedelius Ambergae, qua in urbe per aliquot tempus Praxi Clinicae operam navabat, ad vicina non raro monasteria excurrens Reichenbaci descripsit more sibi consueto ut dum corporis medicinam monachis faceret, animi ipse in bibliothecis ipsorum acciperet.”

Dr. Hartig has collected evidence showing the indebtedness of H.S. in this way to the Libraries of Religious Houses at Prühl, Ennsdorf, Walderbach, Bamberg, and of course Nuremberg. One of the most interesting features in his life was his association or friendship with Trithemius, the learned Abbot of

¹ Scriptores rerum Boicarum I., p. 399.

Spanheim, who was an even greater bibliophile than H. S. himself. There is evidence that H. S. lent Trithemius some MSS. which he never returned; and the correspondence still extant shows their common interest in the new learning.

H. S. remained throughout his life a devout son of the Church. He seemed to find his associations most willingly and readily among those leaders of the religious life of his time, who were unshaken in their allegiance to the old Faith. Strongly as he supported the new Learning, steeped as he was in the humanistic influences of his day, his point of view was that of his earlier contemporary Alexander Hegius, whose fundamental principle was: All learning gained at the expense of religion is only pernicious.

During the last thirty years of the XVth century the intellectual and artistic life of Nuremberg was fostered by many other men of high distinction, some of whom may have been personally known to N. G. Of these none was greater than Johann Müller, more generally known as Regiomontanus, who lived there from 1471 to 1475, when he went to Rome and there died. He was the true father of the Copernican system of Astronomy. "The work that Regiomontanus accomplished," writes Jensen, "in the short space of four years in Nuremberg belongs to the record of phenomena in the history of human development." Albert Dürer was born in Nuremberg in 1471, and thus was at the height of his artistic fame during the lifetime of N. G. Another striking figure in the life of Nuremberg was Wilibald Pirckheimer, a friend of H. S., who placed at his disposal many notes, extracts, and copies for a work on German antiquities.

Such was the intellectual atmosphere in which N. G. spent the last quarter of a century of his life. What of the religious atmosphere? As to this a good deal may be deduced from his own Chronicle, in which from time to time, but in no very systematic way, he tells us a good

deal of the doings in Nuremberg. The subject has been very carefully treated by Dr. G. Pickel in his "Geschichte des Barfüsserklosters in Nürnberg."¹ Dr. Pickel has relied partly on N. G.'s Chronicle and partly on numerous unpublished documents in the Kreisarchiv of Nuremberg and other places.

By the time N. G. settled in Nuremberg the conflict between the Conventuals and the Observants in the Franciscan Order was over, so far as Nuremberg was concerned. In May 1447 under the direction of Nicholas Caroli, the Regular Observance had been formally introduced, Albert Puchelbach had yielded up the keys of office, and Hermann of Bamberg had been appointed Guardian. Puchelbach was restored later to his Guardianship, but was away from the Convent from 1454–1458, during which time the conditions which obtained were highly unsatisfactory and almost a public scandal. Puchelbach returned to Nuremberg and as a result of his efforts a great degree of reform was introduced between 1458 and 1471, when he died. The Regular Observance had by that time made much progress and was firmly established not only in Nuremberg, but also in Amberg, Neustadt, Berg, Eger, Brixen, and other neighbouring centres of Franciscan life.

It is, perhaps, not altogether unprofitable to speculate as to the part played in this movement in South Germany by one who was assuredly one of the outstanding figures of the religious life of the fifteenth century, Saint John of Capistrano; especially as it appears not improbable that the life, example, and preaching of this great Friar impressed and influenced N. G. in his early years. It is impossible to enter here into any detailed account of the career of St. John of Capistrano, except so far as it affects the period and places here under review. It was not until 1451, soon after the Jubilee of 1450 and after the canonization of his spiritual leader, St. Bernardine of Sienna, that St. John left Italy to go to Germany. The

¹ Beiträge zur bayerischen Kirchengeschichte. Band XVIII. Heft 6; Band XIX. Heft 1 and 2 (1912), Erlangen.

last five years of his life, 1451–1456, were among the most eventful and fruitful of his whole career. He made a triumphal progress through Carinthia, Styria, Austria, Germany, Bohemia. In Vienna he addressed crowds numbering from twenty to thirty thousand; indeed, according to Nicholas of Fara, on Corpus Christi his hearers—or those who desired to hear him—in Vienna numbered three hundred thousand. He was everywhere a tireless opponent of the Hussites and a vigorous reformer of public morals. It is worth while to note how St. John's missionary travels took him to several places, with which N. G. was then or later associated. Thus we hear of him staying at the Franciscan Convents of Olmütz and Brünn in 1452, when N. G. was about twelve years of age. In the same year he was at Freiberg, for the Freiberg records mention that he then received all priests and laymen of the parish of St. Nicholas into the Franciscan brotherhood.¹ In July 1452 he was in Nuremberg, where he visited the House of Poor Clares and introduced there the strict Observance. After a short stay at Bamberg, he went on to Leipsig, where he conducted a "mission" in the University. So great was his success in Leipsig, that according to N. G.'s statement sixty Masters and Students entered the Franciscan Order, and of these St. John sent thirty-four as Novices to Nuremberg.² N. G. does not specifically refer to having met St. John of Capistrano, but if the outline of N. G.'s life already given is accurate, it is well nigh certain that either at Olmütz or Freiberg, at Leipsig or Nuremberg he must have come into contact with the great preacher; and even if he did not, it seems likely that if he was at the University of Leipsig in 1456, he would have met many who had themselves come under his remarkable influence. May it not even be that it was the example and inspiration of the great Franciscan, which led N. G. himself to choose the Order of Friars Minor later in his career?

¹ Bursian, l.c. Urk. 286. ² A.F. ii, 342.

Chapter II

NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER AND HIS WORKS

THE works of N. G. have recently been discussed in an article by Père Livarius Oliger in the *Archivum Franciscanum Historicum*,¹ in which a statement is given of the present knowledge on the subject, while fresh conjectures are also examined. Previously the whole subject had been treated by the Fathers of the Collegium S. Bonaventurae in their introductions to *Analecta Franciscana II* and *III*; ² by H. Boehmer in his *Chronica Fratris Jordani* (XXV–LVI); ³ by P. Lehmann in his description of certain MSS. at Munich; ⁴ and by myself in a former volume in this series.⁵ The time appears ripe to review the facts in the light of fresh information as to the sources used by N. G.

Four works can be attributed to N. G. :

1. A copy or recension of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals.
2. A tract published along with the *Trilogium animae* of Ludovicus de Prussia.
3. The “*Maior Cronica Boemorum Moderna*.”
4. A Chronicle of the Franciscan Order.

I arrange the four in the probable order of composition.

CHRONICLE OF THE XXIV GENERALS

The *Chronicle of the XXIV Generals* has been published in full by the Collegium S. Bonaventurae in *Analecta Franciscana* Tom. III, 1897. Its authorship is unknown. It covers the history of the Generals of the O.F.M. up

¹ De quibusdam operibus Fr. Nicolao Glassberger recens attributis. A.F.H. xiii, 388–402 (1920).

² Quaracchi, 1887, 1897.

³ Collection d'Etudes et de Documents, Tome VI, 1908.

⁴ Mittelalterliche HSS. der K.B. Nationalmuseums zu München, 1916, pp. 41–43.

⁵ Blessed Agnes of Bohemia, vol. VII, 35–44.

to the year 1374. It is unnecessary here to consider questions concerning the date of its composition or the sources from which it was derived. The relevant point is that it is found in a manuscript in the Convent of S. Mary of the Angels at Hall in the Tyrol, and that the part of the Manuscript containing the Chronicle is almost certainly in the actual autograph of N.G. The volume contains also a printed copy of Werner Rolewinck's *Fasciculus Temporum*. The Manuscript portion of the volume is, according to information courteously supplied by Professor P. Maximilian Straganz, O.F.M., the work of three hands. On folio 235 of the MS. is the well-known sentence of N. G. :

*“ Explicit in pro vigilia Nativitatis Domini anno 1491
per me fratrem Nicolaum Glasberger in magno frigore et
incommodo iuxta temporis qualitatem. Amen.”*

Now the hand which wrote that sentence—presumably N. G.'s—also wrote the whole of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals ; as well as the material which precedes it (printed in A.F. III 649–665) and that which follows (printed in A.F. III 617–649). Straganz also attributes to N. G. one folio (276) which has not been printed in A.F. III, containing statistical material.

The very miscellaneous assortment of documents thus copied by N. G. is set out in detail by H. Boehmer in his Introduction (p. xxix), and, as indicated above, is also in A.F. III.

It will be readily seen from a perusal of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals as edited in A.F. III, how N. G. has treated his materials. He has made quite considerable additions to the standard text as found in other MSS. Some of the sources from which he obtained material for these additions will be discussed later.

The Hall MS. possesses a system of signatures, most of which have been cut away in binding ; according to Straganz the following remain : b1, b2, b3, b4, b5, b6, b7 ; c1, c2, c3, c4, c5, c6, c7 ; d2, d3, d4, d6, d7.

Testimonio suo honoris et
conf. de p. d. h. restit. fut. off. m. h.
Tpa frs leonardi de giffono Ca. 3. 6. 7. 8. 9.

Presimms Rto

quibus fuit fr^r leonardus
de gephono magister
in theologia de parva
vire laboris electus
et esset eundem p^ro

mister in caplo choloſe celebrato
 anno dñi 1313 Ad qd' caplin dñi
 ppa gregorius xi papius pr 2 annos
 ordinis miſt bullis mltis fauora-
 biles 2 viles toti religioni una
 fuit q ptector ordinis nō ſe intromitteret
 de gubernatione ordinis nī curvacione
 niſi i tribz caſibz in regula expreſſis
 viz i qñtibus ordinis obediencia
 dñi ipe ul romane curie devia-
 ret i fide vacillaret i eglam nō ſer-
 varet Nec aliqz fr' a ptectore or-
 dinis pñtiam peteret nec data acce-
 ptaſſet ſub pena excommunicationis quā maiorē
 ipſo facto pñt miſt alia qz gñalis or-
 dinis nō facit aliquē pñtiam niſi
 ſubditū ſum in excommunicatione mltā i co-
 veniencia ſequeretur Eodem anno
 poſtulatz qz 7 gregorius ordinis ptector
 dñs gualthelmus tituli ſc Clementis
 pbr cardinalis lemanenſis Anno
 dñi 1318 idem dñs ptector ex hac
 vita ingruit Episcopus in pñtibus
 nativitate dñi anno 1891 pñt ſc
 mulari pñtberg in magno frigore
 2 i comoda capto pñt pñtibus

EDITION OF TRILOGIUM ANIMAE

The second work of N. G. is sufficiently described by the Fathers of the Collegium S. Bonaventurae in A.F. II, pp. vi-ix. It is a theological tract printed as part of N. G.'s edition of the *Trilogium animae*, Part III, chapter 6, of Ludovicus of Prussia, and published by Koberger of Nuremberg in 1498.¹ N.G.'s own work is a disquisition upon the thesis: "*utrum beatus Franciscus fuerit discipulus praedicti Ioannis Boni Mantuani, Eremitae et utrum fuerit professus Ordinem et regulam fratrum Eremitarum S. Augustini.*"

Immediately after this material, which is directed against Jacobus Philippus Bergomensis O.S.A. *Supplementum Chronicarum*, N.G. adds about four columns in which he corrects the errors of the same author (under the year 1462) referring to the history of Bohemia. He concludes with these words: "*Quibus dictis ego Nicolaus de Moravia addidi hanc questionem, non sensum de senso recitando, sed verum de verbo narrando pro illis qui raro originales libros ad manum habent.*"

CHRONICLE OF THE FRANCISCAN ORDER

Leaving aside for the moment the "*maior cronica*," which raises difficult questions, we come to N. G.'s most important and valuable work, the Chronicle of the Franciscan Order. It has been published by the Collegium S. Bonaventurae in A. F., Tom. II, 1887. The editors provided an introduction, giving all the then known information about N. G., an account of the tract mentioned above, and in particular a description of the unique MS. which contains the Chronicle. It is worth while to give here a translation of the most important sentences in that description:

"The Manuscript is on vellum, quarto, dating from the beginning of the XVIth century; it has 297 numbered leaves (or rather 298, for folio 192 is

¹ Hain. Repertor. Bibliogr. II, No. 10313.

counted twice). Folios 1–5 contain a description of sundry monasteries of Upper Alamannia by a different hand; this is given in our edition in Appendix II (p. 570 and following). Four leaves are left blank, after which the Chronicle begins on folio 10*a*. It is written by one and the same hand up to folio 282*b*; from that point it is continued by different hands.

“It is known that Brother Nicholas composed these chronicles at any rate up to the year 1472, but probably up to the year 1485, from which point another hand, and, as it would appear, another system of composition manifest themselves. Many indications, especially certain faults which would only appear to characterize the work of a copyist, lead to the conclusion that the Manuscript is not in the author’s autograph. This is confirmed by the very different handwriting found in the above-mentioned copy of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals.”

With these views I am in general agreement.

The Chronicle was composed by N. G., mostly in 1508. He himself gives this date in at least three places.¹ He must have begun it somewhat earlier, probably in 1506. It must have been finished in 1508, for in that year the author died.

As to the value of the work there can be little doubt. It is a veritable mine of information upon matters concerning the Order, especially in Germany. It may not be a work of high literary or historical rank, but it contains long extracts from older works, some of which are not otherwise accessible. In its turn it has been one of the main sources from which later writers and chroniclers of the Order, including Wadding, Gonzaga, and Fortunatus Hueber, have drawn. Boehmer, estimating the importance of the work, says :

“Glassberger does here exactly what he had already done for the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals in his

¹ *E.g.* A.F. ii, pp. 285, 452.

historical collection. He rarely copies his sources word for word, he alters their text sometimes more, sometimes less. At times he welds together the texts of two documents ; at other times he gives twice over, under different years, one narrative derived from the same source ; moreover he dates events quite arbitrarily. For all these reasons the information furnished by Glassberger's Chronicle cannot always be accepted without preliminary verification. If Glassberger is a painstaking compiler, he is unfortunately often not very exact and sometimes clumsy ; one cannot rely upon him, except when he indicates the source from which his information is derived."

MAIOR CRONICA BOEMORUM MODERNA

In four places N. G. speaks in his Chronicle of a "*maior chronica*."

1. On p. 15 (A.F. II), speaking of Agnellus Pisanus and of the reception of the Friars Minor in England by certain Black Friars, he uses the words : "*ut latius patet in maiori chronica*," etc.

2. On p. 58 (A.F. II), after describing the entry of Blessed Agnes of Bohemia into the Order of S. Clare, he adds : "*Eius virginis vita et modestia ac sanctitatis et miraculorum gesta singulari Legenda in maiori chronica exprimuntur*."

3. On p. 83 (A.F. II), speaking of Fr. David, the companion of Berthold of Ratisbon, he adds : "*ut clarius habetur in eius Legenda, quam in maiori chronica posui*."

The word "*posui*" seems to indicate that he was himself the author of the "*maior chronica*."

4. Finally, on p. 84 (A.F. II), speaking of the burial and miracles of Berthold, he says : "*sicut latius continetur in maiori chronica*."

These four passages taken together indicate a "greater chronicle," containing more detailed information about the subjects mentioned. The Quaracchi Fathers, in

their introduction, adopted the view that N. G. was here referring to the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals, and in particular to the copy which he had made in 1491, but this view cannot be supported on more careful investigation. The Chronicle of the XXIV Generals does not give much fuller information on these points than N. G.'s own Chronicle; and, as P. Livarius Oliger has pointed out, this is particularly the case in the third instance, the very one in which N. G. uses the word "*posui*." In the other cases the information given in the XXIV Generals is somewhat fuller.

In 1915, in "Some New Sources for the Life of the Blessed Agnes of Bohemia," I called attention to a MS. in the Ceroni Collection (No. 292) at Brünn, then in Austria, now in Czecho-Slovakia. It is a quarto MS. on paper, containing 352 leaves, loosely bound in contemporary vellum, and it contains a Chronicle of Bohemia, beginning on folio 13 with the words:

"Incipit maior cronica boemorum moderna."

On folio 1, the name of the author is given as "*frater Nicolaus natus de Bohemia educatus in Moravia ordinis minorum de observancia*."

It was possible, even without handling the MS., to reach some provisional conclusions, viz., that it was a work by N. G., and that it possessed a distinct relationship with the Chronicle of the Order, with N. G.'s copy of the XXIV Generals, and with certain Nuremberg MSS. concerning Blessed Agnes.

In 1915, being unable to consult this actual MS., I felt bound to reserve judgment as to whether this was the "*maior chronica*" mentioned by N. G. The MS. has, however, now been lent to me by the kindness of the Brünn authorities and of the Czecho-Slovak Government; and, while it has been possible thus to secure further information, the problem of the "*maior chronica*" is in my opinion not yet completely solved.

If we look in the Brünn MS. for any passages corresponding to those in the Chronicle of the Order which

mention the "*maior chronica*," we find no reference at all to the Agnellus Pisanus incident, and references even briefer than in the Chronicle to the incidents concerning Fr. David and Berthold of Ratisbon ; while as regards the story of Agnes of Bohemia, the material is substantially identical with that in the Chronicle, since both come from a common source, the XIVth century Latin Legend of B. Agnes.

Thus it would appear that, although the Bränn MS. is a "*maior cronica*," and is by N. G., it is probably not the "*maior chronica*" mentioned in his earlier work.

At first, noticing that the Bränn MS. breaks off in the middle of a sentence, I thought that possibly the Bränn MS. was only part of a larger work ; and that, if we possessed the whole work, we should find it to be the chronicle mentioned by N. G. That view is quite untenable, for further investigation shows that N. G. broke off the Bränn MS., because his original¹ broke off at exactly the same point. The Bränn MS. is incomplete, but it is not a fragment of a larger work, of which the rest is lost.

An examination of the handwriting is sufficient to show that we have here an autograph work of Nicholas Glassberger. The handwriting is exactly the same as that in which the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals in the Hall MS. was written. I am indebted to Professor Straganz for supplying the photographs of the Hall MS. which establish this point.²

Fr. Oliger has made a comparison between the system of "signatures" of the Bränn MS. and that employed in the Munich MS. containing the Chronicle of the Order, and has shown that the same system runs through both. As far as the information goes, which I have obtained about the Hall MS., the system of signatures

¹ His original was Clm. 476 (Munich), as shown later on pp. xxx-xxxiii in the detailed description of that MS.

² Reference is made on page xxxiv below to a MS. in Vienna containing one, and probably two, footnotes in the autograph of N. G.

is distinctly similar. There is no doubt that the scribe of the Munich MS. is *not* N. G. himself—the writing is entirely different from that of the Hall MS., and from that of the Brünn MS. ; but it is safe to assume that the Munich MS. was written under the direction of N. G.—possibly at his dictation. While dealing with the question of writing and signatures it should be noticed that the system of signatures in the Hall MS. already mentioned closely resembles that of the signatures in the Brünn and the Munich MSS. ; while in the case of the form of the Hall signatures which I have seen in the photographs supplied, there is more than similarity, there is practical identity.

While the Brünn MS. has been unknown as a work of N. G., it has not been unnoticed or unused. A very detailed and, on the whole, accurate description of it was given by Dr. Beda Dudík in his work, “J. P. Ceroni’s Handschriften-Sammlung,” Brünn, 1850 ; while Dr. Josef Emler, in his valuable edition of the Chronicle of Pulkava in *Fontes Rerum Bohemicarum*, Vol. V (1873), gives in his footnotes all or most passages in which this MS.—in his edition “Ruk. 3”—differs from the standard text. Emler’s reading of these passages is, however, not very accurate and he has left out some passages altogether ; but his work has been of the greatest possible value, as he has identified many of the sources, upon which N. G. was drawing.

It may here be mentioned that the Manuscript at Brünn was also noticed by J. Loserth, and briefly described by him in his article “Ueber die Chronik des Minderbruders Nikolaus von Böhmen” in the *Mittheilungen des Vereins für Geschichte der Deutschen in Böhmen*, Band XVI, pp. 162–164. Loserth deploras the difficulty of handling the MS., which had then been, as he declares, for half a generation in the hands of a scholar (possibly Emler) ! Loserth believes the MS. to be part of a larger work, because it breaks off in the middle of a sentence, but that is not the case.

It has been decided in this volume to print the Chronicle in full from the year 1200 to the end, as this is the period of Franciscan interest. Any reader who wants to study the earlier portion of the Chronicle, *i.e.* down to 1200, can obtain it from Emler's work. In treating the question of N. G.'s sources, the whole of the Chronicle has, of course, been examined.

Before leaving the subject of N. G.'s works, it is necessary to refer briefly to one further work attributed recently to him, but without sufficient ground. P. Lehmann¹ has called attention to a German MS., No. 1191, in the National Bavarian Museum, Munich, containing a Chronicle of the Sisters of the Order of S. Clare, of Nuremberg. This topic has been carefully examined by P. Oliger,² and I consider that he is quite right in his conclusion, viz. that this MS. cannot be, as Lehmann believes, the work of N. G. himself, but that it may have been written under his direction, and that it certainly uses a good deal of the same materials as those which N. G. used for his Chronicle of the Order.

The dedication of the Brunn Chronicle by N. G. to "*Domino Iohanni Marchioni Mantuano*" was discussed in "Blessed Agnes of Bohemia" (p. 44), where I expressed the view that John Francis Gonzaga, fourth Marquis of Mantua, (1466-1519) was meant. P. Oliger has further examined the question and decides that it was not he, but his brother, John Gonzaga di Vescovado, who was born in 1474, and who was probably present at the Imperial Diet at Nuremberg, in 1500, when N. G., who was then also in Nuremberg, may have come into contact with him. On this point I accept P. Oliger's correction.

¹ Mittelalterliche HSS. des K.K. Nationalmuseums zu München (K.B. Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1916, 4 Abhand).

² A.F.H. xiii, 397-402.

Chapter III

NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER'S SOURCES

IN this chapter it is proposed to examine the sources used by N. G. in composing the *Maior Cronica* in particular and also his other works in general. In some cases it has proved possible to discover not merely the works from which he drew, but even—with a fair measure of probability—the actual manuscripts or printed books to which he had access. It will be noticed that in the case of the *Maior Cronica* it has proved possible to identify the source of the large majority of the additions which were made by N. G., and which are printed in italics. Of the unidentified additions the bulk consists of Papal or episcopal documents. N. G. doubtless had access in the Nuremberg archives to large numbers of Bulls and other diplomatic documents, such as Constitutions, Statutes, and Acts of General and Provincial Chapters, and he has used them freely for all his works. In this way he has preserved for posterity some documents which would otherwise be unknown.

I. THE CHRONICLE OF PULKAVA and

II. ÆNEAS SYLVIUS PICCOLOMINI'S HISTORIA BOEMICA (Codex Latinus Monacensis¹ 476)

The main source of N. G.'s *Maior Cronica* is the Manuscript in the Staatsbibliothek, Munich, now numbered Clm. 476. It is a quarto volume, the contents of which are as follows :

An unnumbered leaf : *Contenta huius libri.*

De situ bohemie, aquis et ciuitatibus in ea : atque successionem ducum et regum per figuras. In principio.

Vetus historia bohemicalis. fo. i.

¹ The customary abbreviation for Codex Latinus monacensis, viz. Clm., is used in references to this MS. and others in the same collection at Munich.

Noua historia bohemie per papam pium editum.

156

Lege foeliciter.

HA. S.

Fol. II Inc. *Opus laude dignum. Exp. Ego hartmannus Schedel arcium et medicine doctor anno domini MCCCCLXXVIII phisicus Amberge existens qui locus vicinus bohemie extat, ad ordinem breuem utrasque historias auspice Christo redigere volui, ut que sparsim in veteri atque noua historia continentur, lector diligens inuenire possit.*

Then follow nine unnumbered folios (the last of which is blank) containing the material of a geographical and genealogical character—"De situ bohemie" mentioned above.

Then follows from fol. 1-148 the "*Vetus historia bohemicalis*," which is the Chronicle of Pulkava.

The Pulkava Chronicle, which runs from Babel to 1330, exists in three or four separate recensions, both Latin and Czech, and was composed at any rate before 1380, when Pulkava died. Pulkava was a friend of Charles IV, who gave him his autobiography to translate into Czech and ordered him to write a new Chronicle of Bohemia. It is in itself a highly composite document, the result of gradual accretion, and many of the component parts are known.

Then, after blank leaves, from 156-240 comes the *Noua historia Bohemie*—the work of Pope Pius II (Æneas Sylvius Piccolomini). This section is in a hand quite different from that of the Pulkava Chronicle: it is in that of H. S., who has added the colophon: *Scripti Hartmannus schedel de Nuremberga Anno incarnationis 1476 die 8 mens. Octobris in Nuremberga.*

The remaining contents (fol. 240-249) are unimportant for our purpose.

The dates in the colophon and on fol. II indicate that H. S. must have written the third section before he left Nuremberg in 1476, and that he completed the whole MS. in its present form in 1478, while he was at Amberg.

A prolonged and detailed comparison of Clm. 476 and Brunn 292 leads to the inevitable conclusion that N. G. in writing his chronicle had access to Clm. 476. Indeed, only one argument against that theory has so far occurred, and that not a strong one. The arguments in favour are as follows :

The whole of the second section of Clm. 476—the recension of the Chronicle of Pulkava—has been reproduced in Brunn with meticulous accuracy. It has been not only one of N. G.'s sources, but he has used it as his basis. All other sources have been used as tributaries.

Clm. 476 breaks off at the end in the same uncompleted sentence with the words “ *sponsus et sponsa*.”

Clm. 476 has on fol. 121 the same gap of three or four lines which occurs in Brunn on fol. 299.

Clm. 476 fol. 113^v gives *iii kalend. decemb.* as the date of the death of Queen Constancia. So does Brunn. But the right date, and the one given by other Pulkava MSS., is *iii idus decemb.*

Clm. 476 fol. 115^v omits the word “ *coronam* ” after “ *resignare*.” So does Brunn. Other Pulkava MSS. have it.

Clm. 476 fol. 138. In the margin, immediately beside the passage ending “ *observari*,” there is a sign indicating that something is to be inserted. It is in a different ink from the rest of the MS. Just at this point [fol. 333] Brunn has the addition “ *Et Alexius*,” etc. Did N. G. make the marginal sign ?

In Clm. 476 fol. 140^v the scribe writes out the date “ *trecentesimo* ” in full, instead of putting CCC, as in other years. [At 1200 he writes MCC, so it is not a question of being the century !] Brunn does precisely the same [fol. 337].

Leaving aside these verbal points : Brunn has on fol. 3 a geographical description of Bohemia. Inc. *Bohemia est pars Mesie* . . . Exp. *vene fodiuntur*. This is based verbally, but in a somewhat contracted form, upon the prologue to the *Historia Boemica* of Æneas

Sylvius Piccolomini, contained in folios 148 and 148^v of Clm. 476.

H. S. has prefixed to the two main sections of his MS. nine pages, as already shown, containing a kind of summary of the genealogies of the rulers of Bohemia. N.G. gives practically the same genealogical material in his *Maior Cronica*, but not all together. It is scattered at intervals throughout the MS.

There is, as already stated, one argument on the other side. Three cases have been noticed [two on fol. 296 and one on 302] in which Brünn gives passages which are stated by Emler to be in the *textus receptus* of Pulkava, but which are not in Clm. 476. There are two possible explanations :

(1) That N. G. supplemented the Pulkava text as found in Clm. 476 by referring to some other Pulkava MS., whence he derived these passages.

(2) That Emler, in editing the *textus receptus* in F.R.B. V, has made a slip and included these passages in the *textus receptus*, while, perhaps, they are peculiar to Clm. 476 and to Brünn. I have not been able to verify this point by looking up other MSS. of Pulkava, but I have noticed instances in which Emler has failed to call attention to additions made in the Brünn text to the *textus receptus*.

It will probably be agreed that the overwhelming weight of evidence is in favour of the theory that H. S. must have lent his MS., now Clm. 476, to N. G. for use as the primary source of his "*maior cronica*."

On f. 338 of the "*maior cronica*," when N. G. mentions the "*cronica Boemie*" as asserting the reason for Wenceslas becoming King of Hungary, he means the Pulkava Chronicle, from which the assertion in question is derived. Boehmer refers to "une source inconnue sur l'histoire de Bohême" (p. xxxiii), and this unknown source can now be identified as Pulkava. (See also III, p. xxxiv.)

III. CRONICA HUNGARORUM
(? Codex Latinus Monacensis 442)

Fol. 338¹ of N. G.'s *Maior Cronica* contains a highly interesting sentence, interesting for its own sake and also as indicating N. G.'s methods of work. Discussing the reasons which led the Hungarians after the death of Andreas to seek as their new king Wenceslas, the son of King Wenceslas of Bohemia, N. G. gives Pulkava's reason, viz. that Wenceslas' grandmother was sister of King Andreas of Hungary. "This," he says, "is asserted by the Chronicle of Bohemia: but thou sayest, as doth the Chronicle of Hungary, that it was because Otokar, father of Wenceslas, had to wife Kunegund, daughter of the Lady Anne, daughter of Bela IV, King of Hungary, and that Kunegund was mother of Wenceslas II," etc. The words "thou sayest" attract attention. They suggest that, as N. G. wrote or dictated his Chronicle, he had someone else beside him. Then, again, what was the "*Cronica Vngarie*"? Fortunately a conclusive answer can be given.

Clm. 442, one of the MSS. formerly belonging to H. S., contains (fol. 165-258) a "*Cronica Hungarorum*" of unknown authorship. According to Dr. Hartig, this Hungarian Chronicle corresponds almost exactly with that contained in Cod. 163 of the Scheurl Bibliothek (now in the Germanisch Museum in Nuremberg). The Chronicle was published in 1473 by Andreas Hess in Ofen, and is excessively scarce, only seven copies being known.² This rare volume was known to Josephus Podhradczky, who in 1838 republished it as the "*Chronicon Budense*" at Buda. On page 220 of this latter edition

¹ See below, page 98, line 10.

² A facsimile of this incunabulum was published at Buda-Pesth in 1900 under the editorship of Fraknoi, but as the pages are unnumbered I have found it best to use Podhradczky's edition. Reference may also be made to the *Chronica Hungarorum* of Thwrocz, published by Ratdolt in 1488, which contains a good deal of the same material as the Chronicle published by Hess, including the quotation to which reference is made above.

will be found a sentence which by its agreement both verbally and in argument with the passage on fol. 338 justifies the identification of this Chronicle with the "*Cronica Vngarie*" mentioned by N. G.:

"*Ad ipsum autem Regem Bohemie ob hanc causam posuerunt gressus suos : quia Rex Othocarus, qui per Ladizlaum Regem fuerat interfectus, sicut est superius enarratum, habuit in uxorem filiam Domine Anne, filie Bele Regis Quarti, qui ex ea genuit filium nomine Wencezlaum, qui regnavit in Bohemia patre mortuo multis annis.*"

Other quotations from the Hungarian Chronicle will be found mentioned in the notes on fol. 309 and 338. It will also be observed that one of the quotations (viz. "*Bela eciam . . . honestas*," f. 309) appears also in C.N.G. (A.F. II 82).

It may be conjectured that N. G. used either Clm. 442 or one of the sources from which H. S. copied that manuscript, such as Scheurl Cod. 163 (see also p. xlix); or, possibly, that he was using a copy of the incunabulum of 1473.

IV. THE LEGEND OF BLESSED AGNES OF BOHEMIA (Misc. hist. 146 E. VII 19, Royal Library, Bamberg)

The use made by N. G. of the original Latin Legend of Blessed Agnes of Bohemia has already been examined in some detail by me in "Some New Sources for the Life of Blessed Agnes of Bohemia," published in 1915. It is accordingly necessary here to refer only to some of the main conclusions.

It was found that one passage relating to Blessed Agnes was used both in the *Maior Cronica* (ff. 284, 285), in the Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II, p. 56), in N. G.'s copy of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals (the Hall MS.) (A.F. III, p. 184), and also in the B1 text of the Legend of Blessed Agnes contained in Misc. hist. 146, E. VII 19, a quarto MS. of the XIV century, now in the Royal Library of Bamberg.

Two other passages were quoted, in which there was verbal agreement between the B1 text of the Latin Legend and the account given by N. G. in the Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II 57-58 and 95).

The history of the MS. now in Bamberg showed that in the time of N. G. it was in the House of the Poor Clares of Nuremberg ; and it appears almost certain that N. G. used this particular MS. in writing his *Maior Cronica*, in writing his Chronicle of the Order, and probably in making his revision of the standard text of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals.

I am indebted to Fr. Michael Bihl of Quaracchi for a further reference which shows N.G.'s interest in the Legend of Blessed Agnes. MS. 13671 in the Nationalbibliothek, Vienna, contains (ff. 1^r-30^r) a copy of the German Legend of Blessed Agnes which belongs to the same family of MSS. as the one which I published in 1915. On Fol. 29^v there is a marginal note, unmistakably in the handwriting of N.G.,¹ as follows :

“ Hec legenda satis incorrecte et incomposite scripta est, presertim in propriis nominibus. Ideo si de futuro velit aliquis hanc legendam in latino stilo scribere, mittat ad Nurnbergam pro exemplari ad sanctam Claram, quia ibi correcte habetur, prout ego fr. Nicolaus Glasberger ibi reperi et ipsam in aliud transcriptum scripsi.”

These words make clear that N.G. had himself made a copy of the Latin Legend of Blessed Agnes. It raises the question whether N.G. was referring to his own MS. copy of the legend or to the MS. from which he made his copy when he referred in his Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II, p. 95) to the Legend, adding “ *Vide Legendam eiusdem virginis.*”

The Vienna MS. has another marginal note, viz. on fol. 1^v, which I believe to be the writing of N.G. It is written in a hurried hand and the last words are illegible.

¹ See illustration facing p. xxxviii.

It is a note on the King of Bohemia adopting the name Ottokarus.

“ Diser heiligen Junckfrawen Angnesen vatter ist genant mit seynem tauffnamen Primislaus, aber in der behemescher sprach genant Przimisel, aber nachdem alz man in von der keyser Otto der firde gekrönet hat, da gab ym der keyser Otto den namen Ottakarus, quasi Ottoni carus das ist als [word illegible].

Ottokarus alz eyn lieb dem kaiser Otto. Den namen Ottakarus fint man auch beschriben in der langen legend sant Elzbeth . . . ” [rest illegible].

I give N.G.'s note just as it is, without correction ! The grammar is not quite perfect.

V. COSMAS

One of the main documents of Bohemian history is the chronicle of Cosmas (1045–1125), whose work covers the period down to 1125. After his death his chronicle was continued by various hands. Dr. Beda Dudik, in describing Brunn 292 in his catalogue of the Ceroni collection, had already noticed the similarity of the *Maior Cronica* to the work of Cosmas. He was partly right. The Pulkava Chronicle drew very largely upon Cosmas, and whole passages of Cosmas have thus come through Pulkava into N. G.'s work. But N. G.'s debt to Cosmas is a first-hand one, not merely a second-hand one.

Under the year 1070 (fol. 100) he adds to the Pulkava text a passage of 2½ pages : Inc. *Anno Domini millesimo LXXº, ut scribit Cosmas, Pragensis ecclesie decanus, in cronica sua sic dicens, dux Wratislaus. Exp. imperatoris vii idus Maii.*

Now, it is noteworthy that this passage is one which is found in two MSS. of Cosmas known to us, viz. those numbered 7 and 7^a by Dr. Rudolph Koepke in his edition of Cosmas (P.SS.IX). 7 is a XII century Strasburg MS., 7^a is a XV century Munich MS. (now Clm. 11029).

Both are much mutilated. N. G. must have had access to a Cosmas MS. of the type represented by 7 or 7^a, in order to get the above-mentioned passage.

Under the year 1086 the *textus receptus* of Pulkava, Clm. 476, and Brünn 292 all give a document of the Emperor Henry III with respect to the Bishopric of Prague. In the *textus receptus* of Pulkava the document ends: "*Data iii^o kalendas Maii anno ab incarnatione Domini millesimo LXXXVI^o, indiccione ix, anno autem domini Henrici regni quidem xxxii, imperii vero tercio.*" Cosmas then proceeds: "*Signum domini Henrici tercii Romanorum imperatoris augusti, quod ego vidi ipsum caesarem suis manibus annotantem in priuilegio Pragensis episcopatus.*" And he gives an actual facsimile of the sign-manual. In Clm. 476 the text—which is not at that point in H. S.'s writing—goes down to "*augusti,*" after which H. S. has added in his own hand: "*Quod ego vidi . . . episcopatus,*" with a small, rough reproduction of the sign-manual. N. G. (fol. 115) agrees with Clm. 476 but gives a much larger reproduction of the sign-manual, and adds: "*quod signum Cosmas decanus vidit ipsum,*" etc.

Immediately after the addition above quoted, Brünn adds a further sentence from Cosmas: Inc. *Similiter eodem predicto anno. Exp. miserat Romam,* which is neither in the *textus receptus* of Pulkava nor in Clm. 476. That passage refers to the chaplain of Bishop Gebehard "*n. albinum.*" Now, it is remarkable that the only MS. of Cosmas which gives "*n. albinum,*" instead of writing in full "*nomine albinum,*" is Koepke's No. 7! This is another argument for N. G.'s use of a MS. of Cosmas related to 7 or 7^a.

My belief is that in this case N. G. went back to Cosmas for the sign-manual and for the words "*quod signum,*" etc.; that H. S. at a later date added the small sign-manual and the words "*quod ego vidi*" after seeing how N. G. had added it, but he had not room to add also the further passage—in other words, in this respect Clm. 476 copied from Brünn, and not vice-versa!

VI. CONTINUATION OF COSMAS BY FRANCIS, CANON OF PRAGUE

N. G. used not only the original Chronicle of Cosmas, but also one of the continuations of Cosmas. There is a continuation of Cosmas up to 1358 by Francis, Canon of Prague (Emler. F.R.B. Vol. IV). A whole section in Brünn (here pp. 105 to 109) is taken verbatim from Capitula XXI, XXII of the continuation by Francis.

VII. CHRONICLES OF ERFURT AND REINHARDSBRUNN

It is the merit of H. Boehmer to have called attention in his "*Chronica Fratris Jordani*" to the use made by N. G. of sundry Erfurt Chronicles. Boehmer used O. Holder-Egger's "*Monumenta Erphesfurtensia*," *Scriptores Rerum Germanicarum*, 1899; but he never probed to its root a problem which is a most difficult one; and his list, professedly complete, of the quotations from the Erfurt Chronicles in N.G.'s Chronicle of the Order is by no means complete, while his references are often inaccurate. Moreover, in the matter of these sources, as in so many others, the association between N.G. and H.S. is largely a key to the solution of the problem. There appears ground, therefore, to reconsider the whole situation.

Two Chronicles come primarily into consideration :

- (i) The *Cronica Minor Minoritae Erphordensis* (edit. Holder-Egger, pp. 486-723), quoted in the notes as C.M.M.E.
- (ii) The *Cronica S. Petri Erfordensis Moderna* (edit. Holder-Egger, pp. 117-442), quoted in the notes as C.S.P.E.M.

A third document must also be mentioned :

- (iii) The *Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis* (edit. Holder-Egger, in Pertz Script. XXX), quoted in the notes as C. R.

It is impossible here, nor is it necessary for the present purpose, to review in detail the exceedingly intricate problem of the inter-relationship of these three and of the numerous MSS. in which they are extant.

The *Cronica Minor* exists in several recensions. The main Chronicle ends in 1265: to this is added Continuation I, Part I 1266–1267 and Part II 1267–1272—Holder-Egger's fourth recension. The most important MS. containing this particular recension is Hannover XIII 753, written about 1460. Another MS., containing a later recension, is Clm. 626 (Munich), formerly belonging to H. S. (D 1^a).

The *Cronica Moderna*, which is the work of several authors, covers the period 1070–1335, and the main Chronicle probably took its final shape about 1335. One family of MSS. contains the main Chronicle, with a Continuation I (1334–1335) and a Continuation III (1335–1355); the other family contains the main Chronicle, with a Continuation II (1336–1353).

The *Cronica Moderna* draws largely upon the *Cronica Minor*: consequently it might be asked whether N. G. knew the *Cronica Minor* independently of the *Cronica Moderna*: he certainly did, for he quotes passages of the *Cronica Minor* which are not in the *Cronica Moderna*.

For the period 1209–1215 the compiler of the *Cronica Moderna* has also drawn largely upon the *Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis*¹ (1187–1217). Conversely, the *Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis* drew upon the *Cronica Moderna*. Both Chronicles were the work of gradual and contemporary accretion.

Now, a good deal of the *Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis* and of the *Cronica Moderna* is found in the Hannover MS. XIII 753, already shown to contain the *Cronica Minor*; and H. S. used that MS. in 1507 as the source of his MS.

¹ Holder-Egger has shown that in the XIth and XIIth centuries the closest possible connection existed between the two Benedictine houses of Erfurt and Reinhardsbrunn, and that there was much mutual interchange and copying of manuscripts.

now Clm. 593 (R 2). He had previously made another copy, which he lent to Abbot John Trithemius, who never returned it. He also transcribed parts of the Chronicle in Clm. 901 [2 (c)].

We find, accordingly, at least five MSS. associated with or actually written by H. S., and containing one or other of the Erfurt Chronicles :

- (i) Hannover XIII 753, containing the *Cron. Minor*, the *Cron. Mod.*, and the *Cron. Reinhards*. H.
- (ii) Clm. 593 (written 1507) based on Hannover XIII 753, containing the *Cron. Mod.* R2.
- (iii) Clm. 626, containing the *Cron. Minor*. DI(a)
- (iv) Clm. 901 (written 1483), containing the *Cron. Mod.* 2(c).
- (v) The lost MS. lent to Trithemius.

A close textual examination of N.G.'s *Maior Cronica* and his Chronicle of the Order—as close as it can be without having the actual MSS. of the latter before one—shows numerous variants in the passages quoted from one or other of the Erfurt-Reinhardsbrunn Chronicles, which are characteristic of the “Schedel” texts. One specially striking illustration may be quoted.

In N. G.'s Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II, p. 77), referring to Urban IV's preaching of the Crusade we read :

“*Hic Papa Urbanus IV . . . praedicare praecepit solemniter crucem . . . et . . . stricte dedit in mandatis, eandem crucem per Dei ecclesiam praedicare cum larga indulgentia, quam in litteris misit.*”

The *Cronica Minor* generally reads as above, but ends the sentence : “*cum larga indulgentia in subsidium Terre Sancte.*”

Now, this particular variant—which omits the words “*in subsidium Terre Sancte*” and adds “*quam in litteris suis misit*”—is noted by Holder-Egger as being a characteristic peculiar to his fourth recension of the *Cronica*

Minor. Of that fourth recension the MS. already mentioned, Hannover XIII 753, is the most noteworthy example; and it has been pointed out that H. S. used that MS. as the original for his own MS. Clm. 593, and probably also as the original for the MS. lent to Abbot Trithemius and lost by him. If N. G. was using for his own Chronicle either Hannover XIII 753 or the MS. lent to Trithemius and lost, it is natural to find this variant. It is, however, only right to mention that there is no evidence that N. G. ever used Clm. 593. I have examined that MS. and can find no satisfactory traces of any such use.

In compiling the *Maior Cronica* N. G. used the *Cronica Minor* as follows: Fol. 235 [A.D. 1206], 252 [1215], 279 [1227], 280 [1228], possibly 282 [1231], 288 [1247]. The actual passages are indicated in the notes.

For the same purpose he used the *Cronica S. Pet. Moderna* passim, from fol. 236 [1206] to fol. 337 [1299].

The use of the Erfurt Chronicles made by N. G. in compiling the Chronicle of the Order is set out below. This list supplements and corrects the somewhat incomplete and inaccurate list of quotations given by Boehmer.

From *Cronica Minor*:

Holder-Egger A.F.II

Incipit and Explicit

<i>Page</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Lines</i>	
651, 652	38	24, 25	<i>Engelbertus . . . Isenburg</i>
657	63	27-29	<i>Romae . . . Papae</i>
658, 659	70	20-25	<i>Papa . . . lib. VI</i>
659, 660	72	7	<i>Ludovicus . . . mare</i>
		14-15	<i>Rex . . . Damiatam</i>
662	71	32	<i>Electus . . . fudit</i>
	to 72	1	
663, 664	74	15-17	<i>Canonizavit . . . Franciscus</i>
664	75	11-17	<i>Papa . . . volens</i>
665	75	18-25	<i>Quidam . . . salvandorum</i>
665, 666	74	18-22	<i>Capitulo . . . duplex</i>

666, 667	76	1-6	<i>In die . . . vocatus</i>
667	77	21-26	<i>Congregata . . . misit</i>
670	78	1-3	<i>Inter . . . abstulerat</i>

From Continuation I :

671	78	26-28	<i>Anno . . . Babyloniae</i>
673	79	18-32	<i>Subiugavit . . . coronati sunt</i>
674	80	3-6	<i>Anno . . . millia</i>
675	80	7-14	<i>Hoc . . . occiderunt</i>
677, 678	81	9-12	<i>Prius . . . terram</i>
678	82	7-14	<i>Anno . . . pro eis</i>
680	82	15-19	<i>In exercitu . . . redemit</i>
681	82	20-22	<i>Anno . . . Graeca</i>
681, 682	82	34-39	<i>Similiter . . . Hoyo</i>
682, 684	83	1-6	<i>Egra . . . nominaverunt</i>
684, 685	84	19-31	<i>Anno . . . resuscitavit</i>

At this point C.M.M.E. and its Continuation I come to an end, and N. G. begins to use C.S.P.E.M. for his Chronicle of the Order.

From *Cronica S. Petri Erfordensis Moderna* :

263	84	32	<i>Anno . . . coronatus</i>
	to 85	2	
264	85	11-17	<i>Anno . . . Papam</i>
265	87	5-8	<i>Solemnes . . . fonte</i>
265, 266	86	29-40	[<i>Whole passage, very generally</i>]
267	87	18-26	<i>In hoc . . . repetiit</i>
267	87	27-29	<i>Decrevit . . . Fratrum</i>
273	88	6-9	<i>Anno . . . succurratur</i>
276	89	5-9	<i>Anno . . . nominatus</i>
288, 289	101	32	<i>Post mortem . . . Basiliensem</i>
	to 102	3	
289, 290	103	3-16	<i>Anno . . . Ordinum Prae-</i> <i>latis</i>
290	103	27, 28	<i>Ipso anno . . . hominum</i>
291	103	29-33	<i>Eodem anno . . . Minores</i>
304, 305	106	30	<i>Eodem anno . . . coronatus</i>
	to 107	to 2	

Finally, before leaving this group of inter-related Chronicles, it may be noted that N. G. used the *Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis*¹ itself for certain passages which will be found in the notes, viz. Fol. 232 [1200 and 1202], 233 [1204], 234, 235 [1204], 236 [1207].

VIII. EKKEHARD, CHRONICON UNIVERSALE, AND CONTINUATIONS

Ekkehard, the author of the "Universal Chronicle," was probably a monk of Bamberg who flourished towards the end of the XIth century and the beginning of the XIIth. His Chronicle is known in many MSS. and has been edited in P.SS. VI.

The main Chronicle (*Chronicon Universale*) goes down to 1125. One MS., however, viz. Gotha A.92, contains the "*Auctarium*," covering the years from 705-1088, and the "*Continuatio*" from 1125-1137 or "*Annales Erphesfordenses Lothariani*," edited by Holder-Egger in his "*Monumenta Erphesfurtensia*." Holder-Egger's view was that this MS., with its additions to Ekkehard, came into existence in the Monastery of Reinhardsbrunn. Be that as it may, it can be shown that N. G. used as sources not only the *Chronicon Universale*, which he might have got from any one of many MSS., but also the Continuation from 1125-1137. The most likely explanation is that N. G. had access either to the Gotha MS. or to a copy of it made from the Reinhardsbrunn Archives by H. S.²

¹ Ed. F. X. Wegele. Thüring. Geschichtsquellen. Erst. Bd. Jena, 1854. The page references in the notes are to this edition, not to P.SS. XXX.

² It should be noted that the whole problem of N. G.'s use of Ekkehard and the Continuation (1125-1137) is greatly complicated by two considerations: (1) that large sections of Ekkehard's *Chronicon Universale* were incorporated in the C.M.M.E.; (2) that, similarly, portions of the Continuation (1125-1137) were incorporated in the C.S.P.E.M. Consequently it is sometimes unsafe to dogmatise whether N. G. was using MSS. of Ekkehard and the Continuation, or whether he knew these authorities only in a second-hand form, embedded in the Erfurt Chronicles.

The *Maior Cronica* contains quotations from the *Chronicon Universale* as follows :

- Fol. 47 [957] *Leutolfus . . . moritur.*
 59 [975] *Otto . . . locatur.*
 61 [984] *Ab urbe . . . regnavit.*
 64 [999] *In mense . . . illustris fuit*

N. G. has used the Continuation (1125–1137) as a source for the *Maior Cronica* as follows :

- Fol. 145 [1128] *Eodem anno rex Lotharius . . . ex-communicatur.*
 „ [1129] *Spira . . . capitur.*
 147 [1131] *Rex Lotharius . . . marchio constituitur.*
 148 [1132] *Et hoc anno . . . letatur.*
 „ „ *Ubi Lotharius . . . suscepit.*
 149 [1133] *Lotharius autem . . . rediit.*
 „ [1134] *Imperator Lotharius . . . regibus memoretur.*
 150 [1135] *Eodem anno imperator . . . Polonorum affuit.*
 „ [1137] *Eodem eciam anno Lotharius . . . sepulture.*

It is possible that N. G. used also the *Auctarium* (705–1088) in a few places : e.g. Fol. 93, where he uses a phrase about the death of the Emperor Henry “*hanc vitam presentem in Deo finiuit*,” and on Fol. 108 for the passage “*Eodem anno Henricus . . . priuauit*,” both being exact quotations from the *Auctarium*.

Dr. B. Dudik hypothecates as one of N.G.’s sources a Chronicle dealing with the times of Otto, Lothar II, and Frederick I, but has not identified it. I believe that Ekkehard was the Chronicle Dr. Dudik sought.

IX. CHRONICON REICHENBACHENSE

From this Chronicle N. G. has taken four lines under the year 1133 as follows : [Fol. 149]

“*Eodem anno Dyopoldus marchio de Vohburg dedit monachis Cisterciensis ordinis in Waldsachsen aream in [qua] constructum est monasterium & de silua quantum ipsi fratres per unum diem poterant in circuitu perlustrare.*”

The *Chronicon Anonymi Monachi Reichenbachensis* from 1118–1417, which is edited by Oefelius in *Script. rer. Boic.* I 402, was transcribed by H. S. in Clm. 351 in 1501. He had visited the Monastery of Reichenbach, while he was practising medicine at Amberg.

This sentence, with slight variants, occurs in two separate places in Clm. 351. It is on fol. 23, embedded in the “*Descriptiones Foundationum Insignium Monasteriorum per Regionem Bauarie*,” attributed to Andreas von Regensburg. It also occurs on fol. 77, in a section described as “*Exaratum de Annalibus insignis Monasterii in Reichenbach.*” The passage in the *Maior Cronica* might be taken from either, but it is on the whole closer to the first. The presence of this sentence, and also the relation between the extracts from Andreas von Regensburg contained in Brünn 292 and Clm. 351, go far towards establishing N. G.’s use of Clm. 351.

X. OTTONIS FRISINGENSIS CHRONICON

On fol. 158 (1142) N. G. quotes a passage “*Non multo post Chunradus . . . igne succendit*,” which he himself describes thus :

“*Hec ex cronica Ottonis episcopi Frisingensis fratris Gerdrudis uxoris Wladislai : cetera vide in cronica maiori de Welfonibus & Gehelinis in forma.*”

The passage in question is found in Book VII of the *Chronicon Ottonis*, edited in P.SS. XX, p. 262. A MS. of this Chronicle [Cod. Argentin. bibl. publ. 88], written in Altaïa, was known to and used by H. S., who copied from it certain notes afterwards printed by Oefele in *Scriptores rer. Boic.* I 337. Moreover, in 1500 H. S. ordered from his bookseller, Anton Koberger of Nuremberg, a copy of the printed *Chronicon Ottonis*.

XI. BURCHARDI PRAEPOSITI URSPENGENSIIUM CHRONICON

This Chronicle was used largely by N. G. Extracts from it appear in the portion of the *Maior Cronica* here printed as shown in the notes, as follows : Fol. 232 [1200 and 1202], Fol. 238-244 [1209-1212], Fol. 250-252 [1213-1217], Fol. 266 [1218], Fol. 267 [1219], Fol. 271 [1221], Fol. 276 [1225], Fol. 279 [1227], Fol. 280 [1228].

The greater part of the Chronicle was printed in Augsburg, probably between 1470-1474, under the title : “ *Hystoria Friderici imperatoris magni.*” A copy of the incunabulum was made in 1474 by H. S., while living at Nordlingen, and is still extant in Clm. 516. It was probably either from this manuscript or from a copy of the incunabulum, that N. G. derived his extracts.

The Chronicle is printed in P.SS. XXIII and also in the *Scriptores Rer. German* (ed. Holder-Egger).

N. G. also used the *Urspergensium Chronicon* in his Chronicle of the Franciscan Order, A.F. II, p. 12 [*Anno Domini 1218 . . . compensationem*], p. 18 [*Anno Domini 1220 Fridericus . . . Ierosolymitanum*], p. 37 [*Anno Domini 1225 Conradus . . . signati sunt*].

XII AND XIII. WIDUKIND, RES GESTAE SAXONICAE; AND ANNALISTA SAXO

These two sources are so intimately associated that it is difficult to determine with certainty whether N. G. used both or, if not both, which. Widukind's Chronicle, printed by Pertz (SS. III), was written in the Xth century and goes down to 974. The “*Annalista Saxo*,” which has undoubtedly drawn upon Widukind, covers the period 741-1139. N. G. has used for his *Maior Cronica* passages which are contained in Widukind under the years 931, 950, 953, 955, 958, and 974. Some of these passages may have been taken from the excerpts of Widukind contained in *Annalista Saxo*. But the passage under the date 931 has a stronger resemblance to Widukind than

it has to *Annalista Saxo*, and contains phrases which are not in *Annalista Saxo*, thus suggesting that N. G. had access to the earlier document.

XIV. HERMANNI ALTAHENSIS ANNALES

The Annals of Hermann, Abbot of Altaha, covering the years 1137-1273, have been used largely by N. G. for the *Maior Cronica*. They are edited in full with certain subsidiary documents in P.SS. XVII 351-427, by Philip Jaffé. The Annals are extant in three manuscripts, two of them now in Vienna and one in Munich.

It is ascertained that Hermann of Altaha made use of a number of earlier sources, including the *Annales Sancti Rudberti*. In one passage of the *Maior Cronica*, viz. fol. 207, in the year 1174, "*Imperator autem . . . confirmat*," it is doubtful whether N. G. has used Hermann of Altaha or whether he has gone behind Hermann to the *Annales Sancti Rudberti Salisburg*. (P.SS. IX 777.)

The passages quoted by N. G. from 1200 onwards are indicated in the notes.

XV. ANDREAS VON REGENSBURG

H. Boehmer called attention¹ to the use made by N. G. of the work of Andreas von Regensburg for his Chronicle of the Order. He made use of Andreas von Regensburg also for the *Maior Cronica*; and an examination of the library of H. S. leads to the belief that here also N. G. found his source in volumes belonging to H. S.

The chief work of Andreas is the *Chronicon generale a Cristo nato usque ad sua tempora* [edited by Pez in *Thesaurus Anecdotorum Novissimus* Tom. IV, Pars. III, 274-635, A.D. 1723]. He also wrote a *Diarium Sexennale* and a *Catalogus Episcoporum Ratisponensium*.

¹ *Chronica Fratris Jordani*, XXXII, XXXIII.

The main conclusions reached by Dr. Otto Hartig, who relies on the work of G. Leidinger, are :

1. That H. S., using a MS. now in the Landesbibliothek, Kassel, and in his time in the Monastery of Prühl, extracted therefrom the *Fundationes monasteriorum per regionem Baioarie*, which is part of Andreas' *Chronicon generale*, and which is contained in Clm. 351, fol. 1-56.

2. That H. S. in 1477 copied in Clm. 338 the *Historia sive Cronica de illustribus principibus Bavarie*, which is a re-translation into Latin of the German B text of Andreas' Chronicle.

3. That H. S. perhaps possessed and certainly used the MS. now Cod. 163 of the Scheurl Library, which contains the Chronicle of Andreas and also a *Cronica Hungarorum* (see also p. xxxv).

It is difficult to decide whether N. G. used one or all of these three MSS. containing the whole or part of Andreas' Chronicle, or whether he went back to the same sources as those used by H. S., e.g. whether he had access to the MS. then in Prühl and now in Kassel.

Boehmer claims¹ to have traced quotations from Andreas in the Chronicle of the Order: A.F. II, pp. 151, 163, 164, 167, 177, 184, 192, 201, 223, 224, 237; and he shows how on p. 77, in describing the death of Pope Urban IV (1264), N. G. welds together the narrative of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals and that of Andreas.

In the *Maior Cronica* N. G. uses Andreas von Regensburg on f. 296 [1256], 304 [1264], 309 [1270], 318 [1277].

I have had the opportunity of examining Clm. 351 and find that it does *not* contain at any rate two of the passages quoted from Andreas by N. G. in the *Maior Cronica*, viz. those on fol. 296 and fol. 318.

¹ I admit that I cannot accept Boehmer's finds unreservedly. He regards too easily a general similarity as an actual quotation!

XVI. THE CHRONICLE OF JORDANUS OF JANO

H. Boehmer has examined¹ in great detail the use made by N. G. of the Chronicle of Jordanus of Jano, and the form in which that Chronicle was known to him. The Chronicle covers the period 1207 to 1262 and is a source of great value and authority. While it would not be prudent to accept all Boehmer's conclusions with respect to Jordanus and to N. G.'s use of his work, certain general results may, however, be taken as sufficiently demonstrated, viz. :

1. That N. G. did use a version of the Chronicle of Jordanus for his Chronicle of the Order and made a large number of extracts, some of which he definitely ascribes to Jordanus, whilst others are not so specified.

2. That the text used by N. G. contained certain additions, some of which may possibly be recensions by Baldwin of Brunswick, to whom he alludes (A.F. II, p. 21). Boehmer shows that there never was any separate Chronicle of Baldwin, as supposed by some writers, and in particular that Wadding was wrong in describing as a work of Baldwin the *Chronica Anonyma*, which is merely an extract from N. G.'s Chronicle.²

3. That N. G.'s text of Jordanus contained a continuation down to 1488, dealing chiefly with the Provincials of Saxony, and extant in one MS., viz. Karlsruhe 357.

There is no evidence of the Chronicle of Jordanus having been used by N. G. for the *Maior Cronica*.

Boehmer, in comparing the text of N. G.'s Chronicle of the Order with the text of the Chronicle of Jordanus de Jano, discovers certain additions in the former, which relate primarily, though not exclusively, to the Convent

¹ *Chronica Fratris Jordani*, XXV-LVI.

² This question has recently been discussed afresh by Philipp Schmidt in "Das Chronikon MS. Saxonicum, Balduin von Braunschweig und die Chronica Anonyma" (Schweizerische Theolog. Zeitschrift XXXV, Zürich 1918) ; but the author's conclusions have been traversed by the Quaracchi editors in A.F.H. XV, 575, in their review of his article.

of Beneschau, south of Prag. He has collected these additions, which range in date from 1229–1364, and set them out in his work on Jordanus (pp. 82–86). His theory as to them is that they are derived from some annals of the Convent of Beneschau now no longer extant as a whole. This is an explanation which is not altogether unlikely. It may be noted also that some of these so-called Beneschau Fragments also appear in N. G.'s *Maior Cronica* under the years 1232, 1238, and 1261. The passages in question are indicated in the notes.

It must, however, be observed that one at any rate of Boehmer's Beneschau Fragments can now be definitely identified as coming from the Latin Legend of B. Agnes (see note on p. 41), and this does not strengthen his theory!

P. Livarius Oliger has suggested¹ that Boehmer's Beneschau theory might be destroyed by an examination of the Brünn MS.: he supposed that all Boehmer's "Beneschau fragments" might perhaps be found in the Brünn MS., but that does not prove to be the case.

XVII. FLORES TEMPORUM OF HERMANN

This is a work covering the history of the world from the Creation to 1292. Its author was a Friar Minor, and the work came into existence, probably, between 1292 and 1294. It was afterwards continued until 1349 by another Friar Minor named Hermann, sometimes erroneously called "Januensis," and also frequently known, without early authority, as "Hermannus Gigas." The author is sometimes known by yet another name, viz. "Martinus Minorita."

A MS. copy of this work, *i.e.* of Hermann's chronicle down to 1349, made by Michael Eysenhardt, was used by Joh. Gerhard Meuschen for his edition (Leyden 1750). This edition is fuller and more complete than the earlier

¹ A.F.H. XIII, p. 396.

edition of Eccard (*Comp. hist. med. aevi.* I) or than the later edition by Holder-Egger (P.SS. XXIV). The differences are sometimes important, and especially here, in that the two passages from Hermann used by N. G. for the *Maior Cronica* under the years 1266, 1267 (pp. 68, 69) are readily detected in Meuschen's text, but not in those of Eccard or of Holder-Egger.

N. G. also uses the "*Flores temporum*" in his Chronicle, where he mentions the author as "*Hermannus Gigas*" (A.F. II, 24, 100).

XVIII. HERBORDI. VITA OTTONIS EPISCOPI BAMBERGENSIS

This life, printed by Pertz in SS. XII, 721-822, is used by N. G. for the *Maior Cronica* for one passage on ff. 143-144 in the year 1125, relating to the evangelisation of Poland (p. 779): Incip. *Eodem anno Otto . . . Expl. cum eorum duce convertit.*

XIX. VITA S. ADALBERTI EPISCOPI

The life, generally attributed to John Canaparius (†1005), which is printed by Pertz (SS. IV, pp. 574-595), is used by N. G. in the *Maior Cronica*, ff. 53, 54, to supplement the account of S. Adalbert given in the Pulkava Chronicle. The passage quoted is: Incip. *In legenda Sancti Adalberti . . . Explic. electionem illius.* An examination of the text shows several variants, which, according to Pertz, are characteristic of one particular MS., viz. 3^c in the Metropolitan Library of Prague—to which MS. N. G. possibly had access.

XX. GUMPOLDI VITA VENCEZLAVI DUCIS

The life, written about 968 by Gumpold, Bishop of Mantua, at the request of the Emperor Otto II, has been used by N. G. in the *Maior Cronica* on fol. 39 for an interpolated passage, "*vir deo carus . . . coruscant,*" to supplement the Pulkava Chronicle. The life is printed

in Pertz (SS. IV, 211–223), and this passage is on p. 219. It is noticeable that one of the MSS. was formerly in the Brunn archives—the same place as the *Maior Cronica*—though it is now missing from those archives.

XXI. ROBERT GAGUIN. DE ORIGINE ET GESTIS FRANCORUM

N. G. gives one quotation from Robert Gaguin in his Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II, 216). The work was published in 1497 and H. S.'s Library contained a copy of it.

XXII. BARTHOLOMEW OF PISA. LIBER CONFORMITATUM

Of this work, as might be expected, N.G. made considerable use for his Chronicle of the Order [A.F., pp. 15, 28, 40, 104, 215]; but there does not appear to be any evidence of his use of it for the *Maior Cronica*.

XXIII. GLOSSA JOHANNIS ANDREAE

Boehmer called attention to N. G.'s use of this work in his Chronicle of the Franciscan Order [A.F. II, pp. 88, 104, 108]. It does not appear to have been used as a source for the *Maior Cronica*.

H. S. possessed several works by Johannes Andreas: e.g. Clm. 954; also the "*Lectura arboris consanguinitatis*" (printed in 1488); also the *Ieronymus*, which is mentioned in his will.

XXIV. [WERNER ROLEVINK.] FASCICULUS TEMPORUM AB INITIO MUNDI USQUE AD NOSTRUM TEMPUS A QUODAM CARTUSIENSI EDITUM

Boehmer mentions one instance of the use of Rolevink by N. G., viz. in his Chronicle of the Order [A.F. II, p. 37], where he refers to him not by name but as "*frater Carthusiensis*." He does not seem to have used it for the *Maior Cronica*.

H. S. possessed a printed copy [*ca.* 1478] of Rolevink's "*De laude antiquae Saxonie*," and also a MS. of the "*Fasciculus*." Rolevink's "*Fasciculus*" is the first printed document in the autograph volume by N. G. in the Convent at Hall, which volume contains the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals.

XXV. VINCENT DE BEAUVAIS. SPECULUM HISTORIALE

N. G. quotes from the "*Speculum*" twice in his Chronicle of the Order [A.F. II, 4 and 71], but not in the *Maior Cronica*. H. S. owned the works of Vincent de Beauvais, including the *Speculum historiale* in manuscript and also in the printed edition of 1481 (Basel).

XXVI. PAULUS WALTHERUS DE GÜGLINGEN. DE LOCIS
TERRE SANCTE

The Hall MS. by N. G. contains passages from Paulus Waltherus (printed in A.F. III, 654-658), dealing chiefly with the Maronites in the Holy Land and with Friar Griffio. N. G. incorporated a good deal of the material from Paulus Waltherus also in his Chronicle of the Order [A.F. II, 452, 453].

XXVII. DE PRINCIPIO ET ORIGINE ORDINIS MARIAE
MAGDALENÆ

The Hall MS. also contains passages from or based upon a work with the above-mentioned title: the author is not named. It is printed in A.F. III, 658-665. N. G. has used these passages in the Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II, 37, 47, 91) as the basis for his references to the work of William, Bishop of Paris in founding the Order of S. Mary Magdalene, which had a branch in Nuremberg out of which eventually sprang the House of Poor Clares in that city.

XXVIII. DE BEATO JACOBO DE PORTA BASILEAE SEPULTO

The Hall MS. contains further the Life of Jacobus de Porta, printed in A.F. III, 617-629. In his Chronicle

of the Order N. G. makes two references to Jacobus (A.F. II, 146, 177), and in the latter he is clearly quoting either from the passage contained in the Hall MS. or from some "*libellus*" of Br. Jacobus, such as is mentioned in the notarial document of Johannes Schilling (A.F. III, 623).

XXIX. LEGEND OF S. JOHN OF CAPISTRANO: AND EXPOSITIO REGULAE, BY CHRISTOPHORUS DE VARISIO

N. G. quotes twice from this Legend in his Chronicle of the Order, A.F. II, 294, 372. He also gives an extract from the same Legend in the Hall MS. (A.F. III, 640).

He quotes once from the *Expositio Regulae*, concerning Nicolaus de Auximo. (A.F. II, 311).

XXX. SPECULUM FRATRUM

In one place (1269) N.G. refers to the *Speculum Fratrum* (A.F. II, 81), which the Editors of A.F. (Introduction xv, xxiv) seem to identify with the Italian work of Jacobus Odi Perusinus, *Spechio de l'Ordine Minore*. This exists in four or five MSS. in Umbria. N.G. quotes evidently a Latin work which he claims to have annotated himself. Hence it seems unlikely that the *Speculum Fratrum* can be identified with this Umbrian Chronicle, also called *Franceschina*. A possible hypothesis is that N.G. had before him a MS. of one of those collections of materials about the Franciscan Order, its Rule and its Statutes, which began to appear in print about 1505 under various titles, such as *Monumenta Ord. Min.*, Salamanca 1506 and 1511; *Speculum Minorum*, Rouen 1509, Venice 1513. For example, the edition of Venice 1513 does contain (I, 33va) two of the resolutions of the Chapter of Assisi 1269, mentioned by N.G. l.c. A similar, but much smaller, collection was printed at Barcelona in 1523, with a title that approaches still closer to that given by N.G., viz. *Speculum Fratrum Minorum*, and this may have existed in this form in N.G.'s time.

Another hypothesis of the Editors of A.F. is that the *Speculum vitae beati Francisci et sociorum eius*, Venice 1504, might be the source. But there is nothing in this rare book to confirm that view.

XXXI. KRONIKA NEPLACHOVA (?)

On fol. 320 of the *Maior Cronica* N. G. quotes from the "*gestis Moravorum*," a history of Moravia which has not been definitely identified. As pointed out in the footnote (page 82) the statement alleged to be taken from the source, is in agreement with that in the Moravian chronicle known as Neplachova, and published by Emler in F.R.B. III. The Neplachova Chronicle may provisionally be regarded as one of N. G.'s sources.

XXXII. NUREMBERG CHRONICLE

It would not be surprising in the circumstances to find evidence of N. G. being acquainted with the celebrated Nuremberg Chronicle, the chef-d'œuvre of his friend H. S. In one place in the *Maior Cronica* (fol. 312, year 1273, p. 76) the language used in describing the election of Rudolph of Hapsburg as emperor is somewhat reminiscent of H. S.'s account in the Nuremberg Chronicle.

On fol. 145 of the *Maior Cronica* N. G. describes a siege of Amberg "*secundum Cronicam Nuremberg*," but this reference cannot be shown to be derived from the chronicle of H. S., nor have I succeeded in tracing it.

XXXIII. JOHANNES DE PLANO CARPINI: DE TARTARIS

N.G. refers to this work in his Chronicle (A.F. II, 71). Its full title is "*Liber de moribus, ritibus et bellis Tartarorum*," and it was written about 1247. A French translation by Pierre Bergeron was published in 1634. It would appear from N. G.'s statement that he was acquainted with the work of John de Plano Carpini and was not

dependent entirely on the references made to him by Vincent de Beauvais (see XXV above).

XXXIV. THE CHRONICLE OF THE XXIV GENERALS

Finally, reference must be made to the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals, which was not merely copied by N. G., as has already been noticed, but which formed an important source for his own Chronicle—according to Boehmer the most important source used by him for his work up to the year 1374.

N. G. makes quotations from or references to the following works, thus showing his acquaintance with them ; but this use is so slight that they can scarcely be regarded as sources :

The Postilla of Nicolaus de Lyra—A.F. II, p. 3. We have evidence that the Library of the Friars Minor in Nuremberg had a set of the works of Nicolaus de Lyra—including the portion of the Postilla on the Book of Esther.

Tractatus de divina caritate, by Robertus de Licio. A.F. II, 310.

Hermannus de Pelesteyn. Confessorium Casuum. A.F. II, 168.

In editing the Latin text the following principles have been observed :

Contractions usually recognized are not indicated in the text.

Italics are used to indicate the additions made by N. G. to the Pulkava text, which was his basis. Where a letter or a word is supplied, it is placed between square brackets.

In order to render the text more easily legible the capitalisation of the MS. has not been followed : all proper names are spelt with capitals, whether the MS.

does so or not ; and capitals not required for proper names or for the beginning of sentences are not kept.

In some obvious cases the Latin has been corrected, but a good many cases remain in which it has appeared best to leave the MS. reading, though questionable ; N. G.'s spelling is often distinctly surprising.

* * * * *

It remains now for me to record my grateful thanks to those persons and bodies who have helped in the production of this study. It would have been quite impossible without the courteous co-operation of the Archivist of Brünn, who allowed the MS. containing the *Maior Cronica* to be in my charge for about three years ; and that of the Munich Hof und Staatsbibliothek, which, at the request of H.E. the German Ambassador in London, lent to University College, London, four of the Schedel MSS., including, in particular, Clm. 476. Professor G. Wolff, of the University Library in Munich, helped with most fruitful and valuable suggestions, and with photographs of the MS. of N. G.'s Chronicle of the Order ; while Dr. E. Reicke, of the Städt. Archiv, Nuremberg, and his son made exhaustive and patient searches in the archives of that city and provided some useful material. Professor Straganz, O.F.M., of Hall, sent photographs of the MS. of the Chronicle of the XXIV Generals, and thus enabled me to identify the Brünn MS. as N. G.'s autograph. Professor Robert Priebisch, who is always bringing forth things, new and old, from the treasure house of the Middle Ages—which is as familiar to him as his own study—has solved many critical questions. Mr. A. G. Little and P. Livarius Oliger have read the Introduction, and, though they are in no sense responsible for any defects, they are responsible for many improvements ; Dr. P. Harting has helped with identification of some sources ; and Mr. McKech-nie, of the Manchester University Press, has borne

patiently with the complications of rather numerous footnotes.

Just as this book was going to press the Senate of the University of London have made a grant from the Publication Fund, which has been a help towards the heavy expenses of publication and which has rendered possible the inclusion of two illustrations showing reproductions of N. G.'s handwriting in the Brunn MS., the Hall MS., and the Vienna MS.

ADDENDUM TO PAGE XIV

At the point on p. xiv to which this note refers I had originally stated that N. G. acted as Confessor to the Poor Clares of Nuremburg. In making this statement I was relying on the previous statement of the Editors of the Chronicle of the Order (A.F. II, Introduction v), of H. Boehmer in his *Chronica Fratres Jordani* (Introduction xxvii), and of P. Livarius Oliger (A.F.H. XIII, 389). My attention was, however, called by Mr. Little to MS. 152 in the John Rylands Library, Manchester, a *Diurnale* which is dated 1501, and which contains on fol. 394b a list of those who had held the office of Confessor or Preacher from about 1450 to the date when the MS. was written by Fr. Sebastian Fabri. That list does not contain the name of N. G. It is not impossible that he was Confessor some time between 1501-1508. The references given by the Editors of A.F. II to pages 452, 456, 467 of the Chronicle do not appear to give any authority for the statement, and the other authors have probably quoted from A.F. II.

NICHOLAS GLASSBERGER

Ex Bohemorum Regum spectabili ac illustri prosapia Fol. 3
*oriundo sibi que plurimum Serenissimo principi Domino
Johanni, Marchioni Mantuano, frater Nicolaus, natus de
Bohemia, educatus in Morauia, ordinis minorum de obser-
uancia minimus, promptam ad sua beneplacita voluntatem.*

*Dum, Serenissime princeps, causa deuocionis pridem
Conuentum nostrum in vrbe imperiali Nurenberg visitastis,
interrogatus ego minimus a dominacione vestra de Kunsza seu
Kunsack, quod consistit in provincia Bohemie. Sed quia
propter perfidiam Hussitarum situs ciuitatum Bohemie &
similiter castrorum & opidorum nomina sunt immutata &
eciam aliqua in regno Bohemie loca & ciuitates desolate &
presertim monasteria olim a regibus fundata funditus eciam
euersa : ideo statui modernum situm breuiter in hanc cartam
redigere. Suscipiat ergo dominacio vestra non historiam
prosecutam vniuersalem, sed tantum nomina pro nunc in
nostra lingua pronunciata, que valde dissona sunt ab Italarum
lingua. Ideo raro Italiorum historiographi concordant cum
Alemanis, quia nomina ipsorum ignorant. Quapropter sepe
a veritatis tramite propter similitudinem verborum vel
apparenciam deviant. Sed nunc redeo ad narrationem ipsius
situs terre, de quo sic legimus.*

De provincia Bohemie.

*Bohemia est pars Mesie ad plagam orientalem iuxta
Germaniam posita in Europa, trans Danubium sita versus
aquilonarem plagam, cuius ad orientem vergens latus Moraui
obtinent et Slesitarum nacio. Septe[n]trionem ydem Slesite ac
Saxones, qui et Misnenses & Thuringi appellantur, ad occi-
dentem Advocatorum terra, Baioariorum seu Bauarorum
regio, meridionalem plagam tum Bauari tum Australes
habent, qui ripas Danubii vtrasque accolunt. Nec alia
Bohemie quam Theutonum terra coniungitur, regionis
longitudo latitudoque pene parem formam rotundam tenere*

Fol. 4 dicitur, cuius dyametrum trium dierum itinere expedito patet. Hec regio a montibus maximis & siluis densissimis & altis undique circumsepta—& hanc siluam Hircinam veteres vocauere—diuiditur a Germania & Pannonia & nationibus prescriptis solum per montes | & siluas & flumina. Propter enim moncium altitudinem in plurimis sui partibus valde firma regio est; camporum eciam & pratorum planicie conspicua, facie celi saluberrima, gleba fertilissima, habundans in annona, in auro & argento & ferro & aliis ditissima, fontibus & fluuiis irrigua, aque illic nimis perspicue & ad humanos usus sane. Similiter & pisces suaves & ad comedendum salubres. Nam terram irrigat Albea, fluuius nobilissimus, qui in montibus oritur Bohemorum, qui Boemiam Morauiamque disterminant, mediam ferme provinciam perlabitur primo in occidentem, deinde in septentrionem, ubi provinciam relinquit per angustias moncium & abrupta wallium preceps Saxoniam petit. Alii ampnes in Bohemia Orlicze, quod aquilam signat, Egra qui ex nomine opidi quod alluit¹ vocitatur—opidum autem Egra in Boemica lingua Cheb dicitur & est in terra Advocatorum—et apud Littomericiam Albi inmiscetur. Sed cunctos Multava excedit, que preterfluit Pragam, regiam ciuitatem & metropolim regni & Saczauam & Lusnicam & Misam & Albim secum trahit. Habundant eciam in Boemia herbe innumerabiles non solum pascuales, verum eciam medicinales, ibique diuersorum generum fere, scilicet ursi, apri, cerui, capriole etc. Opida autem & ciuitates toto regno memorabilia: Praga, regi pontificique honesta sedes; & est in tres partes diuisa: Paruam Pragam, Veterem ac Nouam. Post Pragam Luthomisle altera in Boemia pontificalis ciuitas, sed hanc ciuitatem perfidia Hussitarum alienauit a cultu diuino et facta est inhabitatio latronum & raptorum, videlicet Kostka, qui ecclesiam et episcopatum retinet & ubi olim erat monasterium & ecclesia canonicorum regularium, ubi olim deguit sanctus Victorinus, modo est castrum factum equorum & porcorum, & ubi ara Domini extructa fuit, modo est coquorum habitacio & hominum non timencium Deum, sicut ego propriis oculis vidi. Cuthna quoque alia non parua ciuitas, ubi argenti vene fodiuntur.

¹ MS. repeats “alluit” superfluously.

Here follow in the MS. eight blank pages (5—12 inclusive). Folio 13 begins: *Incipit Maior Cronica boemorum moderna.*

The folios 13—230 inclusive are not printed here, as the Franciscan interest does not begin until A.D. 1200. Any reader interested in this earlier portion can find it in Emler's *Fontes Rerum Bohemicarum*. Vol. V.

*Anno*¹ *Domini M° CC° Adalbertus archiepiscopus Salczpur-* A.D. 1200
gensis vi° idus Aprilis obiit, cui Eberhardus, Brixiensis Fol. 231
*episcopus / successit.*¹ Eodem anno terremotus factus est Fol. 232
magnus in festo sancti Gothardi, meridiano tempore per
multa locorum spacia, et sexta feria similiter in eodem
tempore nix valida descendit de celo. *Eo quoque anno*
*Philippus,*² *electus rex, Alsaciam vastavit & quasdam*
*municiones expugnauit.*² *Hermannno autem, lantgrauio Thur-*
*ingie, eodem*⁴ *anno natus fuit filius nomine Ludouicus VI*
kalendas Nouembris ex Sophia, filia ducis Bauarie Ottonis,
qui Ludouicus, filius Hermannii, postea fuit maritus illius digne
*ac sancte Elizabeth,*⁴ *filie Andree regis Vngarie.*

Anno Domini M° CC primo Przemysl, rex Boemie, A.D. 1201
recedens a priore sua coniuge Adla vocata, Constanciam
filiam regis Vngarie, sororem regis Bele, sibi matrimonio
copulauit. Dicta Adla soror erat marchionis Missnensis.
Eodem anno Engelbertus, episcopus Morauie, defunctus
est, cui successit Bauarus. *Et eodem anno Philippus*³ *rex*
*Argentinam obsedit & eam in potestatem accepit.*³

Anno Domini M° CCII° Bauarus, episcopus Morauie, A.D. 1202
diem suum clausit extremum, cui Robertus Anglicus,
prior de Nepomuk, ordinis Cisterciensis successit. *Quo*
*anno in Bamberg*⁵ *curia celebranda indicitur, ubi Philippus*
rex Hermannum lantgrauium, consobrinum Przemysl, sus-

¹ “*Anno . . . successit.*”¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 386).

² and ³ “*Philippus . . . expugnauit*”² and “*Philippus . . . accepit.*”³
Extract from the U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 372). See also Introduction, p. xlvii,
for note as to the actual MS. of the U.C., which Glassberger probably
used.

⁴ “*Eodem . . . Elizabeth.*”⁴ Based on C.R. 90.

⁵ “*Bamberg . . . nuncii*” (page 4, line 3). Based on C.R. 94, 95.

cipiens eius consilia dispensare visus est, et post discessum a curia sinistri inter lantgrauium & Philippum excitantur nuncii. Et eodem anno Conradus,¹ episcopus Wirczburgensis, occisus est VIII idus Decembris.¹

A.D. 1203

Fol. 233

Anno Domini M^oCCIII^o ecclesia kathedralis Olomucensis consumpta ignis voragine per/ dominum Robertum episcopum sequenti anno reparatur structuris. Eodem anno Przemysl rex predictus venit in auxilium regi Romanorum Philippo contra Ottonem de Brunswik, et ab alia parte Reni Ottonem predictum & Adolphum, Coloniensem archiepiscopum bello devicit Philippus rex auxilio Boemorum.

De Canonisacione Sancti Procopii abbatis.²

A.D. 1204

Anno Domini M^oCCIII^o preclarissimus Christi confessor sanctus Procopius canonisatus est, per quem & eius meritis multi curantur infirmi fidelium et sanantur. Eodem anno Przemysl rex Boemie, qui prius Philippo adhererat, sicut supra dicitur, verso nunc casu, re quoque se aliter habente, *quia a papa Innocencio tercio Otto pro rege declaratur*, cum Wladislao fratre suo marchione Moraue, adhesit Ottoni contra regem Philippum prestans auxilium, magna eodem tempore hostibus intulit dampna, terras Philippi hostiliter devastando.

Illo quoque tempore Philippus, rex electus, Thuringiam vastauit, lantgrauium Hermannum cum duobus milibus militum & plurimis sagittariis ipsius provinciam intrare contendit, sed³ lantgravius consobrinum suum Przemisl, regem Boemie, in adiutorium expostulans contra Philippum inplorauit. Qui cum multis pugnatorum milibus veniens in adiutoriam [sic] lantgrauio predicto, adventus sui fama tam acriter insultauit Philippi exercitibus, quod comittendi⁴ & repugnandi spe omnino / frustrati intra muros Erfordensis

Fol. 234

¹ "Conradus . . . Decembris."¹ May be based on U.C.

² This heading is added in red ink.

³ "Sed lantgravius . . . recepit" (page 5, line 15). Based on C.R. 97.

⁴ It will be observed that N.G. here, as frequently, spells this word and similar words with a single "m," where a double "m" is usual. There is no sign of any contraction.

opidi ad recipiendum se strictissime coangustiati sunt. Et Przemysl nimirum iure suo ad resistendum Philippo advenerat, quoniam quidem regnum Boemie Philippus vindicare non metuit et in argumentum desolacionis lantgrauii, ne sibi Przemisl in posterum esset auxilio, suis patruelis [sic], Theoboldi videlicet filiis, regalia cum suis contentis delegare curavit. Exinde Przemisl, iusta indignacione permotus animi, Philippi principes ipso dumtaxat absente intra muros Erfordie, ut dictum est, quasi obsidione coartando vehementer conclusit. Vbi etiam indubitatum regis Ottonis adventum prestolatus est. Cui etiam in presencia Prenestini legati et aliorum principum homagio deditus regni sui sceptrum cum magnis preconiorum tripudiis et persona populi vociferacione ymo genibus [sic] a declarato tunc maxime Ottone rege in Mersburgensi ecclesia recepit & ex tunc nomine ab Ottone sibi imposito in coronacione Ottokarus quasi Ottoni carus deinceps vocabatur et similiter coronam Boemis perpetue dedit. Et iste Przemisl tercius rex Boemie fuit & xxviii annis regnavit.

Ita¹ hoc solempni procinctu rescisso Otokarus, qui & Przemisl, repatriavit & nichilominus Philippus lapsus fuga de Erphordia euasit & cum nichil ei aliud² trophei superesse videretur, semirutam ciuitatem Schmacaldin cum raro domorum habitatore vastavit, procinctum resoluit & tamquam rex inglorius ad sua remeavit.¹

Fol. 235

Anno Domini M^oCCV^o rex Przemisl gratiam Philippi recuperavit, assignans obsides pro vii milibus marcarum. Eodem anno Constancia regina, vxor Przemisl regis Boemie, sibi peperit filium Wenceslaum. Sed ante eum tres filias genuerat, prima duci Karinthie, secunda duci Polonie sunt tradite in vxores. Tercia est in Boemia mortua, Agnes nomine. Sed illa, que est tradita duci Polonie, nuncupatur Anna, que monasterium sanctimonialium ordinis sancte Clare necnon hospitale sancti Mathie Cruciferorum cum stella fundavit in Wratislauia; cuius et corpus sepultum³ ibi feliciter requiescit.

A.D. 1205

Anno Domini M^oCCVI^o filii Theobaldi junioris, scilicet Theobaldus et Sobieslaus, in Boemiam reuocantur.

A.D. 1206

¹ "Ita . . . remeavit."¹ Based on C.R. 98. ² MS. adds "et" superfluously. ³ MS. adds "est" superfluously.

*Et Otakarus*¹ *rex Boemie, consilio Ludouici ducis Bawarie, reliquit Ottonem & adhesit Philippo, qui consensu principum imposuit ei dyadema, faciens eum & successores suos reges, tradiditque filiam suam Venceslao filio suo. Ex hinc reges Boemorum*¹ *semper sunt.*

Fol. 236

*Eodem anno Franciscus*² *ut sapiens architectus cepit penitenciam conuersus a mundo agere & Deo misericorditer disponente edificauit tres ecclesias reparando & ex post iniciauit ordinem fratrum Minorum*² *ewangelicam vitam renouando, per biennium sic simpliciter viuendo, nunc in ecclesiis / reparandis, nunc in siluis meditando, donec indutus virtute ex alto multos socios a[c]quireret, Deo se offerendo. Eodem similiter anno Colonienses*³ *regis Philippi gratiam obtinuerunt, datis obsidibus & pecunia copiosa.*³

A.D. 1207

Anno Domini M^oCCVII^o Constancia regina, vxor Przemysl regis Boemie, peperit Wladislaum postea Morauie marchionem, post quem filiam peperit Agnethem nomine, que nuptias filii imperatoris & totum imperium respuit Friderici, celesti sponso potius fidem donans & sue castitatis sibi consecrans puritatem. Nam fundans monasterium sancte Clare in civitate Pragensi ordinem profitetur eundem, et in loco quo facta est hec fundacio, qui dicitur apud sanctum Franciscum, ibidem in Praga feliciter requiescit, multis clarens miraculis in vita pariter & in morte. Hec sacra virgo fundauit nichilominus hospitale Cruciferorum cum stella in pede pontis Pragensis, diciturque fuisse contemporanea sancte Clare.

Preterea hoc anno sol in celo paciebatur eclipsim. Gertrudis⁴ quoque, regis Andree Vngarie vxor, peperit filiam beatam Elizabeth lantgrauiam.⁴

Hoc⁵ anno Papa Innocencius, iam pluribus annis a pontificibus ac principibus Teutonici regni diuisione imperii damp-

¹ "Et Otakarus . . . Boemorum."¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 386).

² "Franciscus . . . Minorum."² Based on C.M.M.E. 644, 645.

³ "Colonienses . . . copiosa."³ Extract from C.S.P.E.M. 204.

⁴ "Gertrudis . . . lantgrauiam."⁴ Based on C.R. III.

⁵ "Hoc . . . suam" (page 7, line 14). Extract from C.S.P.E.M. 204.

nosa interpellatus, legatos sibi collaterales direxit Hugonem Hostiensem & Vellethrensem episcopum & Leonem sancte Crucis in Iherusalem presbiterum cardinalem & cum eis patriarcham Aquileiensem & Salczburgensem archiepiscopum. Qui in partes Reni venientes Philippum regem apud Wormaciam ab excommunicatione, qua diu innodatus erat, absoluunt, eum in communionem recipientes ; in presencia eius | divina officia celebrarunt. Ad Ottonem vero regem in Saxonia pariter profecti, mandatum apostolicum nuntiantes, ut et coronam & nomen regum deponeret, exhortantes : ipse hec se nunquam facturum cum magna indignacione protestatur. Inde omni, pro quo missi fuerant, infecto negocio digressi, pecunia copiosa a cenobiis & clericis congregata, reversi sunt in regionem suam. Fol. 237

Anno Domini M^oCCVIII^o ¹ Philippus, Romanorum A.D. 1208 rex & Przemisl rex Boemie, ad pristinam sunt amicitiam reuocati et, vt amicitia perpetuo permaneat inviolabilis inter eos, idem Przemisl, rex Boemie, Ottónem, regem Romanorum Philippi aduersarium destruit penitus & devastat, recedens ab Ottone & adherens Philippo & suis amicis. E conuerso Philippus, cupiens maiorem statuere amicitie firmitatem, filiam suam Cunegundem virginem Wenceslao, filio regis Boemie, tradidit in vxorem. Et quoniam idem Philippus Ottoni comiti Palatino de Witelspach filiam suam predictam promiserat se daturum, iiii kalendas Julii Philippum predictum occidit in Bamberg nocturno tempore fraudulenter. Sed & Henricus, quidam ma[r]schalkus Philippi regis, domini sui, vindicans sanguinem, ludentem cum ariete palatinum Ottonem in quadam insula Danubii horribiliter interemit, satellitibus suis, qui cum eo erant, nichilominus morti datis.

Otto de Saxonia postea dyadema imperiale suscepit, et quia idem Otto existens ecclesie persecutor denunciabatur, excommunicatus a papa Innocencio, Przemisl Friderico secundo, imperatoris Henrici filio, qui per electionem

¹ In the Pulkava Chron. contained in Clm. 476, this paragraph is assigned to the year 1210. It is not clear why Glassberger has put it under the year 1208.

principum Almanie consecratus est a domino Innocencio supradicto, deinceps adhesit *ut infra dicetur*.

Fol. 238
A.D. 1209

Anno Domini M^oCCIX^o Constancia regina, vxor Przemysl regis, peperit Otakarum, qui & Przemysl, postea Moraue marchionem. Eodem¹ anno Otto huius nominis quartus in Franckfurt adueniens consensum principum accepit & confirmatus ac sublimatus in regno, quod a longo iam tempore in dissuetudinem venerat, non tam suis quam aliorum comodis & utilitatibus intendens metum iniquis, justis vero & ecclesiasticis maxime personis spem non modicam ingerebat. Henricus vero de Scarphinberg, Spirensis episcopus, qui erat prothonotarius in curia Philippi regis iam occisi, in potestate habebat in castro Trifels coronam & lanceam & insignia regalia, que nec eciam restituere voluit, nisi fieret cancellarius imperialis aule. Quod & factum est. Perdurauitque in eo officio usque ad finem vite sue, cum tamen postmodum habuisset duos episcopatus, Metensem & Spirensen. Timens autem Otto, quod ministeriales spectantes ad Philippum non facile suo subderentur imperio, sed ad suos natiuos dominos redirent, filiam Philippi alteram nomine Beatricem tamquam dominam omnium rerum, que ad generationem illam spectabant, accepit uxorem. Tandem mense Septembri cum exercitu copioso, qui partim a finibus Almanie secum progressus fuerat, partim de ciuitatibus tocius Ytalie ad eum profluxerat, prospero itinere Romam ingressus domino pape Innocencio se exhibuit. Quem papa sicut in tali negocio summe erat necessarium, non tamen ea, que ante oculos sita erant, intuitus, sed quod prudencie est proprium, consideratione preteriti futuri temporis exitum metuebatur. Quapropter de quibusdam, quorum occasione iam pridem inter regnum & sacerdocium non semel | sed pluries perniciose dissensiones emerserant, ab Ottone rege, priusquam manum benedictionis imponeret, securitatem sibi prestolari

Fol. 239

¹ The passage from this point to "*Aquisgrani coronatur*" (page 13, line 28) is largely, but not exclusively, based on U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 372-377); but while the document "*Quoniam maior*" contained in U.C. is not quoted, the letter of Innocent III, given on pp. 10, 11 is inserted, though not in U.C. Two passages from C.S.P.E.M. are also included (see pp. 11-13).

postulauit. Rex vero ad propositi sui consumacionem festinans, de quibuscunque & qualitercunque postulatus fuerat, promittendo fidem iurando securitatem parare non distulit & sic, quod affectabat, ad effectum vsque perduxit. Anno itaque predicto incarnationis M^oCCIX^o, proxima dominica ante festum beati Michaelis archangeli, cum multa celebritate cleri & populi, principum & baronum simulque & innumere populi illius multitudinis, que de diuersis tocius mundi partibus ad tam solempne spectaculum couenerant indicibili alacritate in ecclesiam beati Petri, apostolorum principis, rex Otto ab Innocencio tercio imperiali benediccione per|cepta gloriose est coronatus. Imperator itaque coronatus dimisit exercitus & ipse cum paucis in Ytalia permansit, accipiens terram in potestatem. Insignia quoque imperialia apud Mediolanum com[m]isit, unde magnum fauorem a Mediolanensibus acquisiuit. Inde peragratis partibus Tuscie & Marchie contra ius phasque & iuramentum, quod fecerat domino pape, manu hostili cepit invadere terras sancti Petri ad ecclesiam Romanam pertinentes, occupatisque Monteflacone, Radicophano multisque ecclesie opidis in regnum Neopolitanum & Apulie mouens, id adolescenti Friderico sublaturus, cuius ob etatem tutores curam habebant. Ob hanc causam pontificem in se concitauit, a quo anathemate notatur & imperii titulis priuatur, cum monitus, vt ab iniuria discederet, obedire noluit sed contumax & rebellis existens permansit in suum preiudicium & scandalum plurimorum.

Anno Domini M^oCCX^o Otto imperator excommunicatus A.D. 1210
denunciatur. Hanc ob causam Przemysl, Boemie rex, cum Fol. 240
Maguntino archiepiscopo Sifrido, necnon & Treuerensis cum ceteris principibus Almanie, videlicet lantgrauio Hermannio Thuringie, Ludouico, duce Bawarie, & duce Austrie convenientes Fridericum, regem Sicilie, elegerunt in imperatorem coronandum; cui eciam olim, cum adhuc puerulus esset, viuento patre Henrico fidelitatem iurauerunt. Nunccios itaque dirigunt, qui hanc suam electionem tam in curia Romana quam apud prefatum Fridericum, regem Sicilie, promoueant et ipsum in Alamaniam perducant. Mittitur in hac legacione nobilis vir Henricus de Nifen & Anshelmus de Iustingen, vir ingenuus.

A.D. 1211

Fol. 241

Anno Domini M^o CCXI Otto imperator in Apulia quasdam ciuitates accepit & Capuam peruenit, ubi & hyemauit. Eo tempore ad curiam Romanam venit vir religiosus, abbas de Mormunit¹, qui a festo sancti Michaelis, sicut ipse asserebat, usque ad Quadragesimam quinque vicibus transierat a Roma usque Capuam iussu domini pape, quatenus pacem reformaret inter papam & imperatorem. Ceterum imperator Otto nulla ratione flecti potuit, quin vellet expellere de terra prefatum Fridericum, regem Sicilie, et de Philippo, rege Francie, vlcionem querere eo, quod terras avunculi sui regis Anglie, videlicet Nortmanniam & alias quasdam subegisset & contra ipsum quedam verba temere protulisset. Sane ne tanta turbacio fieret in ecclesiis & populo Christiano, voluit dominus papa sustinere omne dampnum, quod sibi imperator in terris ecclesie Romane intulisset aut inferret. Hanc formam compositionis cum recusasset imperator Otto admittere, dominus papa, tamquam vir animosus & confidens in Domino, tria ardua negocia simul explere voluit & disposuit, que in una extrauaganti patent, que incipit: Quoniam maior etc.; & primo laborauit super depositione Ottonis imperatoris, quia fuit rebellis, quod fuit arduum negocium. Secundo transmisit literas per Christianitatem pro succursu Terre Sancte. Tercio pro adunando generali concilio literas per orbem transmisit. Ipsarum exemplaria hic ponemus.

Innocencius iii, Moguntinensi & Magdeburgensi archiepiscopis & episcopo Bambergensi, necnon karissimo in Christo filio illustri regi Boemie ac dilectis filiis lantgrauio Thuringie & duci Meranie: Nunciis & litteris vestris ea, qua decuit, benignitate susceptis vestroque intellecto processu licet semiplane descripto gauisi sumus in Domino et in potencia virtutis ipsius discrecionem ac deuocionem vestram multipliciter commendantes, quod ad conterendum draconem, quem Dominus ad illudendum illi formauit inhiantem vos ac alios deuorare immaniter, incepistis magnanimiter operari prosternendo tyrannum tam ecclesie quam imperio pestilentem. Ne igitur adiciat, ne resurgat nobis & vobis & aliis principibus tam ecclesiasticis quam mundanis, est summopere providendum, ut

¹ I.e. Morimund.

nec fraudibus possit seducere nec viribus preualere, quia nouissima eius forent deteriora prioribus, nec iam draconis tantum nequiciam sed leonis eciam seuiciam exerceret nichil penitus inconcussum relinquens, quia nec rebus parceret nec personis, simul in unum spiritualia & corporalia confundendo. Quia vero nemo mittens manum ad aratrum & respiciens retro aptus est regno Dei, neque qui ceperit sed qui perseuerauerit a Domino commendatur,¹ quamuis potissima pars huius negotii principum quidem extitit, cuius si medium bonum fuerit, optimus utique suus erit, prudentiam vestram rogandam duximus & monendam per apostolica scripta vobis mandantes, quatenus in incepto proposito sagaci consilio & efficaci studio procedatis, nichil de contingentibus omittentes sed ad consummationem ipsius opes impendatis & operas iuris | & iuribus Fol. 242 innittentes in Domino principaliter confidendo, qui conteret Sathan sub pedibus vestris dabitque vobis de tyranno triumphum, qui nitebatur vos & alios in extremam redigere seruitutem. Quantum namque sit hoc in secula valiturum ad conseruandum non solum dignitates & iura principum, verum eciam & pacem & iusticiam populorum, vestra prudentia non ignorat. Quare pro tali & tanta re nullatenus dubitetis per vos & alios quoscunque potestis opus honestius laborare de auxilio & fauore nostro securi, quoniam in eodem proposito sumus persistentes & formam vobis & aliis ad hoc fideliter intendentibus parati sumus impendere consilium & auxilium oportunum, nec desistimus operari, quecunque ad hoc negotium promouendum agnoscimus expedire, quod magnifice iam cepit per Dei gratiam prosperari. Datum Laterani iii kalendas Novembris, pontificatus nostri anno XIII^o.

Sane² principes, videlicet rex Boemie, archiepiscopus Moguntinensis & Magdeburgensis, lantgrauius Thuringie & marchio Misnensis, voluntariis motibus cum deliberacione adhibita ad quoddam orientalis provincie opidum vnanimiter collecti sunt & execucionem fecerunt mandati apostolici pro eo, quod Otto dignitatibus ecclesiasticis insultans, archipresules

¹ MS. *commendantur*.

² “*Sane . . . factum est*” (page 12, line 16), quoted from C.S.P.E.M. 208–210.

simpliciter & vituperiose clericos, abbates, monachos, reuerendas matronas mulieres appellans, vniuersosque, quos Deus honorare precepit, superbie stimulis agitatus omnes dehonoraui. Proinde tacite digredientes ceteros principes ea latuere consilia, donec idem principes in opido regio Nurenberg collecti publicis vocibus Ottonem hereticum hominem nomina[ve]runt & publicam ei facientes contradictoriam, Fridericum, Henrici ultimi imperatoris filium, antea ab vniuersitate electum, futurum imperatorem declararent. Ad hanc aduersus Ottonem contradiccionem, Guntherus, Ottonis dapifer, cui Otto publica regni negocia comiserat, quantum poterat, principum machinationibus parabat contraire & cum festinacione, qua poterat, villas regias muris & fossatis sufficienter munitas, Northusen videlicet & Mulhusen, armata manu preoccupare festinabat, vt lantgrauium, quasi hostem publicum & aduerse partis principaliorem, exinde impugnaret. Quod et factum est. Exinde nuncii ad Siciliam [missi sunt] & specialiter Anshelmus supradictus [ad] Fridericum regem vixque obtinuit apud illum, vt iret in Almanniam. Vxor namque ipsius Constancia, filia regis Arragonensis, quam prius uxorem habuerat Emericus, rex Vngarie, frater Andree regis, plurimum studuit | eum reuocare, ne iret. Similiter & multi potentes Sicilie timentes euenire sibi periculum propter fraudem Almanorum. Ast ipse, cum paruulum iam ex conjuge haberet filium, Henricum videlicet, postmodum regem factum, relictis uxore & filio & terra, viriliter iter arripuit ad accipiendum imperium et primo Romam applicuit; vbi accepto fauore & consilio domini Innocencii pape Januam peruenit. Huius ciuitatis ciues iter sibi parant securum. Timebant enim incursus Mediolanensium & ipsum Papiam usque perducunt. Tunc Papienses & Cremonenses coadunati in vallem Tridentinam ipsum conducunt.

Fol. 243

A.D. 1212

Anno Domini M^oCC^oXII^o Otto imperator veniens in Almanniam congregauit exercitum & contra lantgrauium de Thuringia & alios rebelles iam effectos toto tempore vernali & estiuo bellum mouit. Interea¹ nupciarum impendia cum

¹ "Interea . . . extremum" (page 13, line 5), extracted from C.S.P.E.M. 211.

gloriosis expensis Ottoni in Northusen preparantur, que leto principio prenunciata calamitoso fine tabuerunt. Nempe Philippi regis filia, dum Ottonis talamis fuisset representata, paruo post tempore vitalibus carens spiraculis, ad malum Ottonis diem clausit extremum. Interim Fridericus electus imperator, cum non posset directo itinere venire in Almaniam, de valle Tridentina per asperrima loca Alpium & invia & iuga montium eminentissima obliquando iter suum venit in Reciam Curiensem, ibique receptus ab episcopo Curiense & abbate Sancti Galli & nobili viro Henrico de Sacco perductus est usque ciuitatem Constanciam. Audito vero aduentu ipsius Otto imperator interim venerat de Thuringia, volens comprehendere aut interficere aduersarium suum, ipseque manebat in opido Yberlingen, sed a multis tam Bauaris quam Sueuis derelictus stans in confusione non poterat occurrere sepedicto Friderico ad pugnam. Vnde factum est, vt auxilio comitis de Quiburc & aliorum quibus ipse predia imperii & paterna large¹ distribuit et obligauit, usque Basileam perveniret, vbi tunc Henricus de Veringen, episcopus Argentinensis, cum quingentis | militibus sibi occurrit. Quorum & aliorum fretus Fol. 244 auxilio per partes Reni descendit & ciuitates & terras, exceptis quibusdam castris paucis, in potestatem accepit. Otto nichilominus attemptans, si posset resistere, ex altera parte Reni descendit venitque ad quoddam castrum, nomine Brisanc, quod in sua potestate habebat, vbi cum maneret, ciues eiusdem castri, nescio qua occasione commoti & ex fama rerum audaciores effecti, contra eum & suos insurrexerunt, vbi quidam vlnnerati & interfecti sunt. Ipseque profugus effectus vix recessit ab eis. Qua fama divulgata satis laboriose ad Saxoniam rediit, & sic de regno pellitur & Fridericus Aquisgrani coronatur. Fridericus eodem anno imperialem in Basilea solempnem curiam celebrauit. Regem Ottakarum alias Przemysl & regnum Boemie libertauit, gracias concedendo, prout in subscriptis priuilegiis continetur.²

Fridericus, diuina fauente clemencia Romanorum imperator electus & semper augustus, rex Sicilie, ducatus

¹ MS. *lege*. *Large* supplied from U.C.

² E.R.B. i, pp. 247, 248.

Fol. 245

Apulie & principatus Capue. Cum decus & potestas imperii nostrum processerit statum vt non solum ceterorum principum diuinitatis verum eciam sceptrum regalia a nostra conferuntur maiestate, gloriosum reputans & magnificum quod in tante nostre claritatis beneficio et aliis crescit regie dignitatis augmentum nec ob hoc eminencia nostra aliquod patitur detrimentum, inde est quod nos attendentes preclara deuotionis obsequia, que Boemorum populus ab antiquo tempore Romano exhibuit imperio tam fideliter & deuote, / et quod illustris rex eorum Otakar a primo inter alios principes specialiter pre ceteris in imperatorem nos elegit, et nostre electionis perseuerancie diligenter ac vtiliter semper astiterit, sicut dilectus patruus noster pie memorie rex Philippus, omnium principum habito consilio, per suum priuilegium instituit, ipsum regem constituimus & ordinamus, et tam sanctam & dignam constitutionem approbamus, regnumque Boemie liberaliter & absque omni pecunie exactione & consueta curie nostre iusticia, sibi suisque successoribus in perpetuum concedimus, volentes, vt quicumque ab ipsis electus in regem fuerit, ad nos vel successores nostros accedat regalia debito modo recepturus. Omnes eciam terminos, qui predicto regno attinere videntur, quocunque modo alienati sint, ei & successoribus suis possidendos indulgemus: ius quoque & auctoritatem investiendi episcopos regni sui integraliter sibi & heredibus suis concedimus, ita tamen, quod ipsi ea gaudeant libertate et securitate, quam a nostris predecessoribus habere consueuerunt. De nostre autem imperialis liberalitatis munificencia statuimus, quod illustris rex predictus, vel heredes sui, ad nullam curiam nostram venire teneantur, nisi quam nos apud Bamberg vel Nuremberg celebrandam indixerimus; vel si apud Mersemburg curiam celebrare decreuerimus, ipsi sic venire teneantur; quod si dux Polonie vocatus accesserit, ipsi sibi ducatum prestare debeant, sicut antecessores sui quondam Boemie reges facere consueuerunt: / sic tamen, vt spacium sex ebdomadarum

Fol. 247 *

* Fol. 246 is entirely filled with a genealogical table.

veniendi ad predictas curias eis antefigatur. Saluo tamen, quod si nos vel successores nostros Rome coronari contingeret, ipsius predicti regis Otakari vel successorum suorum relinquimus arbitrio, vtrum¹ ipsi trecentos armatos nobis transmittant, vel trecentas marcas persoluant. Ad huius autem nostre constitutionis et confirmationis memoriam & robur perpetuo valiturum, presens priuilegium per manus Hainrici de Parisius, notarii & fidelis nostri scribi & bulla nostra aurea iussimus comuniri. Anno, mense, et indictione subscriptis. Huius rei testes sunt isti : archiepiscopus Barrensis, episcopus Tridentinus, episcopus Basiliensis, episcopus Constan-
ciensis, episcopus Curiensis, abbas Augensis, abbas sancti Galli, abbas de Witeber, Bertoldus de Nimphe, regalis curie prothonotarius, comes Vlricus de Chiburg, comes Rudolphus de Hauesburg & lantgrauius de Elsacia, comites Ludouicus et Hermannus de Frobürg, comes Vernherus de Hoemburg, Arnoldus nobilis de Warch, Rudolphus advocatus de Ruprechtsuirle, Rudolphus de Ramensperg, Albero de Taneshus, camerarius, & alii quam plures magnates & nobiles & liberi, quorum testimonio hoc priuilegium constat esse confirmatum. Acta sunt hec anno dominice incarnationis M^oCC duo decimo, mense Septembri, xv indictione, regni vero domini Friderici, illustrissimi / Romanorum imperatoris Fol. 248
electi & semper augusti, regis Sicilie XV^o. Datum in nobili ciuitate Basiliensi per manus Vlrici prothonotarii vi kalendas Octobris feliciter. Amen. *Sanctio imperatoris.* In² nomine sancte & individue Trinitatis amen. Fridericus, diuina fauente clemencia Romanorum imperator electus & semper augustus, rex Sicilie, ducatus Apulie & principatus Capue. Ad extollendos regie dignitatis titulos eorum votis nos acclamare decreuimus, quorum fidem ac deuocionem circa vniuersa negocia nostra promouenda integram et inconvulsam cerciori experientia didicimus, dignum namque & honestum arbitramur fore vt eorum

¹ MS. apparently "verum" [*sic*].

² E.R.B. i, p. 248.

Fol. 249

qui promocioni nostre ab exordio assistere non dubitarunt, tanto solercius obsequiis respondeamus, vt eciam eorum exemplo plerosque alios ad fauorem nostrum stabilius allicere valeamus. Nos itaque animadvertentes preclara deuocionis obsequia, que illustris rex Boemie Otakarus intimo cordis affectu cum vniuersa Boemorum gente hactenus nobis exhibuit ac eciam Domino largiente in perpetuum est exhibiturus, suis ad presens, in quantum possumus, respondere cupientes obsequiis, notum facimus tam presentibus quam futuris, quod nos eidem regi Boemie donamus et confirmamus, ac in perpetuam possessionem tradimus / proprietatem nostram Flosd,¹ cum ministerialibus seruis, cuiuscunque fuerint condicionis, omnique iuris integritate quarumlibet possessionum, prout awus noster Fridericus, pie memorie gloriosus Romanorum imperator augustus, emit a domina Adelheida, comitissa de Clewe. Item donamus ei et confirmamus castrum, quod dicitur Swamburg² cum ministerialibus seruis, cuiuscunque condicionis sint, omnique iuris integritate quarumlibet possessionum, vt dictus awus noster emit a duce Henrico de Medelyk. Item provinciam Mileyn et Reychenbach ; item donamus ei et confirmamus castrum Liebtenstein³ cum omnibus pertinenciis suis. Eidem eciam regi conferimus in feodum & confirmamus possessiones Mantille & Luce cum omnibus pertinenciis suis. Preterea castrum Donyn cum suis pertinenciis donamus & confirmamus, si illud a marchione Missnense absolvere poterimus. Si vero ipsum castrum absolvere non poterimus, quidquam tres ab eodem rege electi imperii principes, qui tunc in gracia nostra fuerint, cum tribus supariis⁴ decreuerint, facere satagemus. Vt autem nostre liberalitatis donacio concessio & confirmacio maiori veritate, robore & euidenciori future successioni pateat venore, presens priuilegium per manus Henrici de Parisius, notarii et / fidelis nostri scribi et bulla nostra

Fol. 250

¹ E.R.B. *Vlozze*.² Id *Svareenberg*.³ E.R.B. *Lichtemstein*. ⁴ Id *supanis*.

aurea iussimus comuniri. Anno, mense, indiccione subscriptis.¹

Eodem anno reliquie sanctorum Thome, Jacobi & Thatei apostolorum, necnon sancti Mauricii de Theutonia sunt in Pragam allate.

*Anno*² *Domini M°CCXIII° epistole a domino papa per orbem mittuntur*² *de concilio convocando, que incipit Vineam domini Sabaoth etc., et alia de negocio crucis Quia maior nunc instat etc.* / A.D. 1213

*Proinde Otakarus, rex*³ *Boemie, & lantgravius Thuringie cum ceteris regni baronibus ad indictam sibi in Franckenfurt curiam circa Epiphaniam accinguntur, ubi lantgravius consobrinus regis Boemie, a rege & a quingentis ferme militibus gratissimo occurso gloriose receptus est. Post hec autem rex Francie Philippus faciem regis Romanorum cum benedictione xx milium marcarum argenti preveniens, fedus ad invicem pepigerunt, ut in prosperis & adversis mutuis se vicissitudinibus consolidarent & alter alteri fauorabiliter coesse deberet.*³ Fol. 251

Anno Domini M°CCXIII° secundus Daniel, Pragensis episcopus, obdormiuit in Domino, et Andreas, eiusdem ecclesie prepositus, episcopus xviii sibi successit. A.D. 1214

*Eodem*⁴ *anno curia in Merseburg celebranda indicitur cum breuibus & paucis pro temporis articulo in absencia Ottonis consumatur. Ex tunc Boemi haud longe in Saxoniam profecti mole predarum graues repatriaauerunt.*⁴ *Otto*⁵ *imperator tunc adiuncto sibi rege Anglie & comite Flandrie & comite Bolonie et aliis quamplurimis coadunauit exercitum, ut pugnaret contra Philippum, regem Francie, quem plurimum habebat culpabilem de omni suo labore. Rex autem Francie omnem populum terre sue obviam sibi pergere precepit, & dispositis aciebus nimium pugnatum est,*⁵ *& Francie*⁴ *rex Otto-*

¹ Witnesses and date same as in preceding document.

² “*Anno . . . mittuntur.*” Extract from U.C. which contains both the above-mentioned Papal letters in full. (P.SS. xxiii, 374, 375).

³ “*Rex . . . deberet.*” Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 212.

⁴ “*Eodem . . . repatriaauerunt,*” and “*Francie . . . descendit*” (page 18, line 3. Based on C.S.P.E.M., 212. ⁵ “*Otto . . . pugnatum est*”⁵ Based on U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 377).

nem in fugam conuertens multitudinem suorum nobilium in campo conclusit et captiuam abduxit. Inde sors Ottonis a supremo cardine lapsa sine spe recuperandi incredibiliter descendit.

A.D. 1215

Fol. 252

Anno¹ Domini M°CCXV° celebratum fuit concilium Lateranense Rome in ecclesia Saluatoris que Constantiniana vocatur, mense Nouembris in festo omnium Sanctorum, presidente domino Inno|cencio papa tercio, pontificatus eius XVIII anno, in quo fuerunt metropolitani LXXI, episcopi CCCCXII, abbates & priores octingenti, inter quos extiterunt de precipuis patriarchis duo, videlicet Ierosolimitanus & Constantinopolitanus. Anthiocenus autem graui lang[u]ore detentus venire non potuit, sed misit vicarium episcopum Anteradensem; Alexandrinus vero, sub Sarracenorum dominio constitutus fecit quod potuit, mittens pro se diaconum suum germanum. Greci & Romani imperii legati, regum vero Ierusalem, Francie, Hispanie, Anglie, Vngarie, Cipri, Arrogonie, necnon & aliorum principum et magnatum ingens multitudo oratorum.¹ In² eodem concilio Rome in die sancte Cecilie dominus Andreas in Pragensem episcopum ordinatur.²

Eodem³ anno obiit lantgrauius Thuringie Hermannus,³ consobrinus Otakari, regis Boemie, cui Ludouicus, filius eius, successit in principatu, maritus beate Elizabeth.

A.D. 1216

Anno Domini M°CCXVI° fratres sancti Adalberti sunt in Pragam portati, qui in monasterio sancti Georgii feliciter requiescunt.

Eodem⁴ anno Innocencius papa obiit apud Perusiam⁵ XVI kalendas Augusti, pontificatus sui anno XIX. Cui successit Honorius tercius, qui Cencius nominabatur, eratque camerarius cardinalium & pecunias ipsis collatas fideliter & prouide distribuebat. Qui sedit annos X & mensibus [sic] duobus.⁴

¹ "Anno Domini . . . oratorum."¹ Ibid., p. 378.

² "In eodem . . . ordinatur."² Close similarity to Letopisy Ceské, 1196–1276 (Emler. F.R.B. ii, 283).

³ "Eodem . . . Hermannus."³ Apparently based on C.M.M.E. 649. Holder-Egger points out that the Erfurt chronicler is wrong in assigning the death of Hermann to A.D. 1215, as it did not occur till April 25th, 1217. N.G. follows C.M.M.E. in this error.

⁴ "Eodem . . . duobus."⁴ Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, pp. 8,9), and U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 378). ⁵ MS. *Perusium*.

Anno Domini M^oCCXVII^o fit generale passagium. Nam A.D. 1217
rex Vngarie Andreas, pater sancte Elizabeth, & Leopoldus,
dux Austrie, Otto dux Meranie, Erkenbertus, frater eius, dux
& episcopus Bambergensis, Henricus comes Niuernensis &
Gualtherius, regis Francie camerarius, & alii multi nobiles
& comites, cum valida manu | transfretauerunt ad Terre Fol. 253
Sancte subsidium. Hii omnes inito consilio cum Iohanne,
Iherosolimitano rege, Damiatam, Egipti urbem, obsidere
instituerunt & sequenti anno eam mense Maii circumde-
derunt.

Eodem anno Andreas, Pragensis episcopus, eo, quod Otakarus rex & omnes barones regni Boemie monasteria, ecclesias piaeque loca totius Pragensis diocesis, in domibus & in viis iugo seruitutis intolerabili opprimebant et exactionibus inauditis grauabant impie, sic quod eos tedebat viuere, tam regem quam barones eius excommunicationis sentenciis innodauit, supponens regnum ecclesiastico interdicto, domino pape super tantis grauaminibus nichilominus proponendo querelam. Vnde grauamina postea sunt aliquialiter alleuiata, quedam vero prorsus submota. Quemadmodum in theloneis, quibus exactionabantur clerici, Iudeus denarium, clericus autem de corona capitis XXX denarios persoluebat. *Papa autem Honorius episcopo Pragensi tale fecit mandatum, ut hic sequitur.*

Honorius Pragensi episcopo. Non tam destestabilis quam
abominabilis consuetudo in Boemie partibus inoleuit, quod
laici quidam contra Deum & sacrorum canonum instituta
ecclesiasticos viros capiunt & eos carcerali custodie manci-
pantes presumunt mortis supplicio condemnare, propter quod
insolencia crescit in aliis per exemplum & honor ecclesiasticus
cottidie conculcatur. Nolentes igitur per aliquorum contu-
maciam confundi ecclesie libertatem, presencium tibi auctoritate
mandamus, quatenus iuxta officii tui debitum prefatos laicos
super premissis in tua diocesi contra clericos delinquentes, vt
ab huiusmodi presumptione desistant, monicione | premissa Fol. 254
per censuram ecclesiasticam appellatione remota compescas.
Nichilominus studium adhibeas & operam efficacem, ut statuta

sacri concilii generalis ab omnibus inviolabiliter obseruentur. Datum Laterani iiii idus Marcii, pontificatus nostri anno primo.

Ad eundem episcopum prima bulla. Honorius Pragensi episcopo. Ad audienciam nostram te significante pervenit, quod quidam de populo tue diocesis pretextu cuiusdam illicite consuetudinis xxiii, quidam xii, quidam vi, quidam tres denarios tantum solvunt pro decimis annuatim in ecclesiarum preiudicium & salutis proprie detrimentum. Cum igitur consuetudo huius modi dici debeat potius corruptela, fraternitati tue per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatenus consuetudine eadem nequaquam obstante memoratos ad solutionem debitam decimarum monicione premissa per censuram ecclesiasticam appellatione remota compescas. Datum Laterani ydus Octobris, pontificatus nostri anno primo.

Hiis apostolicis mandatis dominus Andreas, episcopus Pragensis, a papa Honorio susceptis posuit interdictum predictum per totam suam dyocesim, & hanc papa confirmavit mandans singulis episcopis hanc similiter denunciari in totum regnum Boemie auctoritate apostolica; & domino episcopo Morauorum siue Olomucensi sic scripsit papa Honorius tercius.

Honorius Olomucensi. Presencium tibi auctoritate precipiendo mandamus, quatenus ad Boemie regnum accedens sententiam interdicti, quam venerabilis frater noster Andreas, Pragensis episcopus, in diocesim suam auctoritate tam nostra quam sua exigente iusticia promulgavit pro eo, quod rex & magnates Boemie libertates ecclesie infrangebant, precipias auctoritate nostra in cunctis ecclesiis tam exemptis quam aliis artissime obseruari, contradictores per censuram ecclesiasticam appellatione remota compescas. Moneas insuper regem & magnates predictos vt debitam ecclesie restituant libertatem et eam in futuro illibatam conseruent, cominans eis, quod, nisi ab ecclesiarum grauaminibus conquiescant, iram | Dei sibi merito comparabunt, & in eos ecclesia Romana manus suas aggrauabit, prout viderit expedire. Datum Laterani iiii idus Maii pontificatus nostri anno primo. Idem Salczburgensi archiepiscopo & Patauensi & Kymensi episcopis. Presencium

vobis auctoritate [etc. as in previous letter to "infringebant"] relaxacione venerabilis fratris Moguntinensis non obstante, precipiatis auctoritate nostra in cunctis ecclesiis [etc., as in previous letter to "expedire"]. Datum Laterani iiii idus Maii, pontificatus nostri anno primo.

Rex Boemie pape. Rex Otakarus. Vtinam a memoria vestra non excidat, quam deuotus filius Romane curie semper extiterim. Quedam enim ardua pro Romane curie reuerencia sum aggressus, ad que contemplacione proprie utilitatis nullatenus | accessissem. Mandata domini pape hactenus admisi & Fol. 256 admissa, quantum decuit, diligencia affectui mancipaui; semper summi pontificis monitis acquieui nonnunquam in contrarium a quibusdam magnatibus monitus & rogatus. Sed utinam sedes apostolica, que in omnibus consuevit esse liberalis, michi soli non sit ingrata. Pater sancte! non sine dolore vestre refero sanctitati, quod cum [per] quosdam fideles tam clericos quam laicos percepissem, quod episcopus Pragensis tam persone mee quam regni mei grauamen studiosius intenderet, nolens controuersiis, quas minabatur inferre, eundem habere iudicem & aduersarium, sedem apostolicam appellauit. Ipse vero post appellacionem in Boemia commorando videbatur appellacioni deferre petens a me, quod super hoc ad curiam Romanam nuncios meos destinarem, promittensque ipse suos destinare pro eodem. Et post aliquantulam moram spoliata ecclesia Pragensi & facta maxima collecta in clero, finxit se ire ad sanctum Anthonium, & ita a me in bona pace recessit. Tandem tractu temporis proiecte sunt quedam litere continentes, ut dicitur, quod episcopus idem in tota Boemia interdixerit diuina celebrari. Hoc audito conueni tam clerum quam populum & super facto diligentem habui tractatum, nec tamen potuit certus auctor vel portitor literarum inueniri. Postea quesui in capitulo Pragensi | utrum eorum consilio esset talis Fol. 257 lata sententia, qui responderunt, preter eorum consilium maliciose & impetuose mecum actum esse. Series autem litterarum proiectarum talis est, sicut didici: Ego Andreas, Pragensis episcopus, interdixi diuina celebrari per totum episcopatum meum iure ordinarie iurisdictionis litterarum Honorii pape, quarum forma talis est: Significante nobis Pragensis

ecclesie episcopo, quod quidam de populo Boemie decimas non soluerunt, eidem dedimus in mandatis, ut eos ad debitam prestationem decimarum per censuram ecclesiasticam compellat. Michi tamen nulle fuerunt littere presentate. Ponamus tamen, quod tales impetrauerit. Videat vestra paternitas utrum de minoribus personis ad maiores, puta ad regem, cum sit facta mencio in litteris, que formam decretalis iurisdictionem suam potuerunt prolongare vel prorogare? Item si quidam, quod non credo, decimas denegarent, culpam eorum in regem vel regnum debeant refundere? Item utrum in homines non confessos nec convictos ymo volentes in curia Romana non cedere sed contendere potuerunt sententiam promulgare? Peto igitur, ut si episcopus confiteatur, se interdictum in terram meam promulgasse, scribatis iudicibus nobis expressius nominandis, ut de appellatione cognoscant, et si quid in eius preiudicium invenerint attemptatum, irritum denuncient, presumptionem tantam pena canonica vindicantes. Quod si episcopus diffiteatur, faciatis, quorum ope vel auxilio literae ille proiecte fuerint, precipientes eos canonice pene subiacere. Et ut in summa omni calliditati aduersariorum occurram, rogo, ut, si forma, quam prius pecii, non placeat, scribatis aliquibus executoribus, | qui accepta ydonea caucione¹ de parendo iuri terram meam, que de facto, licet non de iure dicatur interdicta, similiter de facto relaxent vel denuncient interdictam non fuisse, quod secundum peritorum iudicium debet nemini denegari.

Fol. 258

Honorius² iii illustri regi Boemie. Inter ceteros mundi etc. . . . Datum Anagnie x kalendas Junii, pontificatus nostri anno primo.

Fol. 261

Moguntinus archiepiscopus Pragensi episcopo. Venerabili & dilecto in Christo fratri & amico Andree Pragensi episcopo. S., Dei gracia sancte Moguntinensis sedis archiepiscopus, salutem & affectuosam in Domino karitatem. Discrecioni vestre duximus declarandum, quod honorabilis & dilectus amicus noster Otakarus, rex inclitus Boemie, grauem nobis

¹ MS. *capcione*.

² E.R.B. i, 270-272. This Bull refers to the dispute between the King of Bohemia and the Bishop of Prague on the freedom of the Church, and urges him to send suitable envoys to Rome.

querelam transmisit, pro occasione cuiusdam litere non auctorabilis in ecclesiam clam proiecte diuina in Pragensi diocesi tamquam interdicta cessarunt, propter quod attencione deuota postulauit a nobis, ut cum dyocesis eadem nobis sit in spirit[u]ali iurisdiccione subiecta, viris aliquibus prouidis daremus auctoritate metropolitana in mandatis, vt auctoritatem interdicti diligentissime scrutarentur & causam, quibus si manifeste constaret idem interdictum ex reuerendissimi patris nostri domini pape auctoritate & consciencia processisse, facerent illud firmitate debita inuolabiliter obseruari. Si uero a nobis vel alio nobis subdito latum esse, idem ab ipso rege & suppanis plenaria caucione recepta de parendo iusticie super cunctis, que causam dederint interdicto eidem secundum canonicas sanctione[s] laxare facerent diuina resummi & auctoritate nostra absoluerent in forma ecclesie, si qui pretextu eiusdem interdicti se metuerent excommunicationis vinculum incurrisse alias incidisse. Attendentes igitur huic petitioni regie iuris suffragia non deesse, ne tanta terra, cui, vt | premisimus, in spiritualibus providere diu esset caritura diuinis in plurimorum perniciem animarum, consilio capituli Moguntinensis & prudentium virorum cum sollicita deliberacione accepta, sicut memoratum est, abbate de Strahow¹, decano Pragensi, archidiacono Littomirecensi mandauimus inquirendum & ex inde procedendum, prout superior forma demonstrat, sicque ne fiat vobis preiudicium, curauimus habundanter caritatem vestram non minori quam debemus sinceritatis studio diligentes.

Fol. 262

Honorius papa Moguntinensi archiepiscopo. Cum² ad preces . . . compellant. Datum Ferentini, xiii Kal. Augusti. pontif. nostri anno primo.

Executoribus predictis in eundem modum, Maguntinensis executoribus. Domini pape mandatum cum literis ipsius & nostris recepimus & per[l]egimus reuerenter. Qui, si plenissime novisset quo moderamine equitatis, quam rationabili fecerimus condicione interdictum Pragensis dyocesis relaxari,

Fol. 263

¹ MS. Drah.

² E.R.B. i, 272. Honorius III upbraids the Archbishop of Mainz for removing without authority the interdict imposed by the Bishop of Prague.

redargucionis nostre ferulam mitigasset. Mandamus si quidem hoc modo relaxacioni ipsius, ut, si processit auctoritate apostolica interdictum, iuberetur ab omnibus inviolabiliter observari; si vero a domino Pragensi episcopo vel ab alio nobis subdito latum esset, accepta sufficienti caucione a domino rege Boemie & suppanis de parendo iusticie super cunctis, que causam prebuerant, interdictum ipsum ad cauendum animarum periculis relaxetur, maxime cum ante prolacionem interdicti ad nos fuit appellatum.

Eodem anno ultra mare expirante¹ treuga Christianorum & Sarracenorum in primo passagio generali congregatus est exercitus in Achon cum tribus regibus, Johanne Ierusalem Andrea Vngarie & rege Cipri, qui mistica numera non deferentes, parum egerunt memoria dignum. [Affuit etiam]² Leopoldus, dux Austrie, & Otto dux Meranie, cum multis comitibus & viris generosis. Aderant episcopi peregrini archiepiscopus Nycossiensis, Balocensis, Bambergensis, Cycensis, Monasteriensis, Trajectensis & cum eis vir nobilis & potens Waltherus de Avenis, qui reversus in passagio vernali XL milites reliquit in seruicio Terre Sancte, quibus prouidit sumptus sufficientes per annum. Patriarcha vero Ierosolimitanus cum magna cleri & populi humilitate tollens reuerenter viuifice crucis lignum, feria vi post omnium Sanctorum profectus ab Achon in castra Domini, que precesserant ad Recondanam. Hoc autem dulce lignum in Terra Sancta reseruatum, perditum fuit usque ad hec tempora. Imminente siquidem conflictu Sarracenorum cum Christianis tempore Soldani crux secta fuit, et pars | ad prelium delata & ibidem perdit, pars reseruata, que nunc exhibetur. Cum tali ergo vexillo exercitus Domini per planum Fabe recessit usque ad fontem Tubanie. Sequenti vero die per montes Gelboe profecti sunt Bethsaydam, ubi castra fixerat aduersarius, sed metuens tam ordinate procedentes, tentoria tollens & fugiens, terram vastandam reliquit Christi militibus. Vnde Jordanem transeuntes in vigilia sancti Martini corpora sua pacifice

Fol. 264

¹ "Treuga . . . reversi sunt Achon" (page 25, line 4). Extracted from C.S.P.E.M., pp. 216, 217.

² MS. reads "aufugit enim," which gives no sense.

lauerunt in Jordane, quiescentes per biduum ibidem. Deinde super litus maris Galilee tres mansiones fecerunt, peragrantes loca, in quibus Saluator noster mirabilia fuerat operatus, sicque reuersi sunt Achon.

Anno Domini M^oCCXVIII^o Theobaldus dux Boemie, A.D. 1218
necnon Laurencius, Wratislaviensis episcopus, sunt in Prussiam profecti. Eodem anno interdictum positum in Pragensi diocesi, exempti religiosi, videlicet Cistercienses & Premonstratenses & alii non seruabant, propter quod papa Honorius dedit in mandatis episcopo Olomucensi, ut predictum interdictum seruarent compellendo eos per censuram ecclesiasticam non obstante eorum exempcione, ut hic patet :

Honorius papa Olomucensi episcopo. Presencium tibi auctoritate iterato precipiendo mandamus, quatenus interdictum sic est positum in Pragensi diocesi per venerabilem fratrem nostrum Pragensem episcopum & demum auctoritate apostolica confirmatum, relaxatione venerabilis fratris nostri Moguntinensis Archiepiscopi non obstante, in ecclesiis Cisterciensibus & Premonstratensibus & Hospitaliorum & omnium exemptorum eiusdem dyocesis facta¹ per censuram ecclesiasticam remoto cuiuslibet contradiccionis & appellacionis obstaculo firmiter obseruari, non obstantibus priuilegiis eisdem monasteriis ab apostolica sede concessis. Alioquin dilectis filiis Decano & Scolastico Wratislaviensi damus nostris literis in mandatis, ut te a recepcione literarum nostrarum infra xx dies ad id exequendum districcione | qua convenit, appellacione remota, Fol. 265
compellant. Datum Laterani vi kalendas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno secundo.

Idem archiepiscopo Strigoniensi. Presencium tibi auctoritate, precipiendo mandamus, quatenus eos, quos venerabilis frater noster Pragensis episcopus supposuit interdicto, non recipias ad ecclesiastica sacramenta, sed precipiens ipsius episcopi sentenciam relaxatione venerabilis fratris nostri Moguntinensis archiepiscopi non obstante inuolabiliter obseruari, regem ac magnates Boemie diligenter moneas et inducas, ut debitam ecclesie restituant libertatem & eam in futuro illibatam conseruent, comminans eis, quod, nisi ab

¹ MS. factas.

ecclesiarum grauaminibus conquiescant, iram Dei sibi merito prouocabunt, et in eos ecclesia Romana manus suas aggrauabit, prout viderit expedire. Datum Ferentini vi kalendas Augusti, pontificatus nostri anno secundo.

Idem papa regi Boemie. Litteras tue serenitatis¹ . . . aliter prouidere. Datum Laterani iiii nonas Nouembris, pontificatus nostri anno secundo.

Eodem anno, quia² dispositum fuerat in concilio generali, ut eo anno in kalendis Iulii cruce signati iter arriperent, multi de partibus Almanie proficiscuntur. Ast ne pergant, in ciuitatibus Apulie impediuntur, sed auctoritate sedis apostolice votum eorum differtur & in utilibus remittitur per compensacionem.²

Eodem tempore post³ natiuitatem Domini exercitus Christianorum ultra mare quadrifariam diuisus est. Rex Vngarie & Cipri Tripolim profecti sunt, ubi rex Cipri adolescentulus diem clausit extremum ; rex Vngarie, breui tempore commoratus, cum magno dampno Terre Sancte recessit. Rex vero Ierusalem & dux Austrie cum Hospital[ensibus] sancti Iohannis, Bambergense, Cycense, Traiectense & Monastrense episcopis remanserunt in Achon, | et castrum in Cesarea Palestine breui tempore utiliter & constanter firmauerunt, & in basilica principis apostolorum festum purificationis patriarcha cum sex episcopis solemniter celebrauit. Demum templarii cum domo Theutonicorum & domino Walthero de Auenis & paucis peregrinis Castrum Filii-Dei, quod olim destructum, nunc Castrum appellatur Peregrinorum, firmare ceperunt, quod situm est in dyocesi Cesariensi inter Kayphas & Cesaream. Monastrensis episcopus apud Cesaream obdormiuit in Domino ; post hoc exercitus rediit in Achon. Episcopi autem Almanie & multi alii properabant ad transfretandum & breui tempore ibi commorati.³

Fol. 267

¹ E.R.B. i, p. 274. Honorius III promises the King of Bohemia to take no action against Bohemia until his envoys arrive.

² "Quia . . . compensacionem." ² Quoted from U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 379).

³ "Post . . . commorati." ³ Extract from C.S.P.E.M., pp. 217, 218.

Anno Domini M^oCCXIX Otto¹ iiii aliquando imperator, A.D. 1219 a sententia absolutus a prelati excomunicacionis, obiit in Castro Hartisburc et in Brunswick sepultus est, regalia insignia Henrico, Palatino Reni, assignanda regi Friderico electo reliquit. Que ad instanciam eiusdem regis Friderici eodem anno sub quadam forma compositionis ipsi assignata sunt.¹

Fridericus² rex curiam in Nurenberg cum multis principibus celebrauit & negocia imperii in Almaniam disponens³, se preparat ut veniat Romam coronandus. Qui veniens Romam in octaua sancti Martini in imperatorem in basilica sancti Petri de mandato Honorii pape per ministerium domini Hugolini, protectoris ordinis Minorum, tunc Hostiensis episcopi (postmodo apostolici² Gregorii IX) imperiali benedictione sublimatur et coronatur & sequenti die regina [in] imperatricem. Vbi⁴ imperator de bonis et prediis imperii in Italia sitis multa contulit ecclesie beati Petri & vota votis accumulans de manu eiusdem cardinalis episcopi rursus crucem accepit ad perficiendum iter Ierosolimitanum.⁴ |

Hoc⁵ etiam anno Nonas Julii facta est translacio sancti Thome, martyris atque pontificis Anglie, in ciuitate Cantuariensi,⁵ qui sanctus pro libertate ecclesiastica martirium subiit, vt supra dictum. In illo tempore multi clerici in dyocesi Pragensi non seruantes interdictum positum ab episcopo in sua diocesi incurrerunt irregularitatem, propter quod episcopus predictus rogauit papam, vt cum ipsis dispensaretur, quod papa fecit sub hac forma. Fol. 268

¹ "Otto . . . assignata sunt."¹ Based partly on C.S.P.E.M. 216, which supplies the words "in castro Hartisburc et in Brunswick"; while the rest is extracted from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 387).

² and ⁴ "Fridericus . . . apostolici"² and "Vbi . . . Ierosolimitanum."⁴ Quoted from U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 379). "Imperiali . . . imperatricem" is interpolated from C.S.P.E.M., p. 224. The statement is not historically accurate, as the coronation of Frederick was performed by Honorius III, not by Gregory IX. The Erfurt Chronicle is quite accurate. This passage illustrates the disastrous results of N. G.'s habit of putting together two passages from different chronicles.

³ MS. adds "&" superfluous.

⁵ "Hoc . . . Cantuariensi."⁵ Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 224.

Honorius papa episcopo Pragensi. Ex parte tua nobis fuit humiliter supplicatum, ut cum prelati, presbyteris & aliis clericis tue dyocesis, qui celebrauerunt in interdicto & excommunicatione a te in tua dyocesi promulgatis, cum sint multi, dispensare de benignitate sedis apostolice dignaremur. Nos igitur de discrezione tua plenam fiduciam obtinentes vices nostras in hac parte tibi duximus committendas, per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatenus statuas super hiis auctoritate nostra, quod secundum Deum videris statuendum. Datum Laterani etc. anno tercio.

Eidem super eodem idem. Cum, sicut in nostra proposuisti presencia constitutus, concilium Moguntinum subiecerit excommunicationum sentencie clericos Pragensis diocesis, qui deinceps de manu laici sine tuo vel successorum tuorum assensu iuxta prauam eiusdem diocesis consuetudinem ecclesiastica receperint beneficia vel sic recepta infra duos menses post dictam sentenciam in tuis vel successorum tuorum manibus non ducerent resignanda, nos tuis precibus inclinati, cum per hoc, sicut asseris, prauam eiusdem diocesis consuetudinem predictum voluit concilium aboleri, factum huiusmodi auctoritate apostolica duximus approbandum. Datum Laterani iiii nonas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno tercio.

Fol. 269

Eidem super eodem. In nostra proposuisti presencia constitutus, quod nonnulli Cistercienses, Premonstratenses & alii exempti tue dyocesis pro eo, quod interdicti | tui sentenciam contempnentes presumpserunt celebrare diuina, vinculo sunt excommunicationis astricti & quidam etiam excommunicati, adhuc non desinunt celebrare, credentes se excommunicatione huiusmodi non teneri. Vnde nobis humiliter supplicasti, ut cum sit multitudo in causa, propter quod seueritati est aliquid subtrahendum, illos absolueret ac cum eis dignaremur misericorditer dispensare. De tua itaque discrezione plenam in Domino fiduciam obtinentes fraternitati tue per apostolica scripta mandamus [quatenus] inquisita super hiis & cognita veritate agas super hoc cum eis misericorditer, prout secundum Deum videris expedire. Datum Rome apud sanctum Petrum iii kalendas Junii, pontificatus nostri anno tercio.

Idem eidem. Exposuisti nobis in nostra presencia consti-

tutus, quod cum diocesis tua ecclesiastico per te supposita interdicto in clericos, qui interdictum huiusmodi non seruarent, generalem sententiam excommunicationis promulgaris, multi ex ipsis prefatam incurrerunt sententiam, qui absolucionis beneficio non obtento absque tua licencia fecerunt se ab alienis episcopis ad ordines promoueri. Vnde a nobis suppliciter postulasti, ut dispensandi cum talibus, si non commiserunt in ordinibus sic susceptis viciū symonie ac alias ydonei fuerint, licenciam tibi concedere dignaremur. Nos ergo tuis precibus annuentes de speciali gracia tibi concedimus postulata. Datum Reate xiii kalendas Augusti, pontificatus nostri anno tercio.

Cum quidam clerici tue ciuitatis & diocesis per nos sint officio beneficiisque priuati pro eo, quod contra interdictum tuum celebrare temere presumpserunt & quidam eciam celebrauerunt contra interdictum auctoritate nostra promulgatum & propalatum, nos de tua circumspeccione gerentes fiduciam specialem, absoluendi eos ac dispensandi cum illis, prout singulorum merita videris postulare, auctoritate presencium liberam tibi concedimus potestatem. Datum Viterbii xv kalendas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno quarto.

Anno Domini M^oCCXX^o Poloni¹ a Pruthenis et a Ruthenis sunt in ore gladii crudeliter interfecti.¹ Hoc tempore² Przemisl rex & Barones Boemie vniversi per solempnes nunccios Andree Pragensi episcopo data fide, / ne sibi timeat, rogauerunt, ut ad eos ad Morauie metas descenderet & Austrie cum ipsis de statu honoris & ecclesie tractaturus. Propter quod cum eis conveniens in termino sibi prefixo sed nichil proficiens de Sefelt Romam rediit. Tunc papa Honorius videns causam prolongari in partibus Boemie misit legatum a latere dominum Gregorium, sancti Theodori dyaconum cardinalem, sub hiis mandatis.

Honorius papa dilecto fratri Gregorio, sancti Theodori dyacono cardinali, apostolice sedis legato. Quia venerabili fratri nostro, Andree Pragensi episcopo, propter regem &

¹ For "Poloni . . . interfecti."¹ Cf. Letopisy České, 1196–1278 (Emler. ii, 283), but Let. České reads "furore gladii" instead of "in ore gladii."

² Pulkava in Clm. 476 assigns this event to 1221.

barones Boemie periculosum nimis existeret in loco litigare suspecto, decet [te] cuius circumspeccioni persone sue securitatem commisimus pro nobis & te ipso ac eodem episcopo super hoc sollicite prouidere. Quo circa discrecioni tue per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatenus de competenti loco et securo, unde nullum timeatur periculum, provideas episcopo memorato. Datum Laterani xiii kalendas Julii, pontificatus nostri anno quinto.

Eidem super eodem. Venerabilis frater noster Pragensis episcopus humiliter postulauit a nobis ut an metropolis in Pragensi ecclesia, & utrum plures episcopatus in diocesi possint sua constitui, per te mandaremus inquiri. Sic enim, ut episcopus ipse proponit, status libertatis ecclesiastice in terra illa roborari valebit; quod attendens felicitis recordacionis Innocencius papa predecessor noster, suis supplicacioni huiusmodi auribus inclinatis, in parte super hoc procedere curauit. Quo circa discrecioni tua per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatenus de singulis huius negotii circumstanciis sollicite ac prudenter inquirens, quod circumspectio tua repererit, per litteras tuas nobis studeas fideliter intimare. Datum Laterani xiii kalendas Julii, pontificatus nostri anno quinto.

Eodem anno capitulum cum multis clericis celebratum est Patauie a domino Vlrico episcopo, ubi aderant legati domini apostolici, pro vicesima parte omnium proventuum trium annorum, secundum Innocencii tercii in concilio Lateranensi statutum pro recuperacione Terre Sancte.

Geruasius, Premonstratensis abbas, transfertur in episcopum, cui Cumradus successit.

Fol. 271

A.D. 1221

Anno Domini M^o CC^o XXI^o Gregorius cardinalis Boemiam absoluit ab excommunicatione & interdicto. Res¹ imperii in Lombardia et in Tuscia imperator Fridericus cupiens disponere a Bononiensibus & quibusdam aliis ciuitatibus inhoneste tractatur. Et insignia imperii, videlicet coronam & lanceam ac alia, remittit in Almanniam, faciens ea custodiri sub potestate Eberhardi de Tanne, ministerialis & dapiferi sui, in castro Walpurg. Filium quoque suum Henricum

¹ "Res . . . exhortentur" (page 31, line 11). Extract from U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 379).

circiter octo annos habentem nutriendum & gubernandum comittit Conrado de Tanne, pincerne & ministeriali suo, in castro Wintersteten, qui ipsorum & aliorum principum interuentu postmodum a patre suo & principibus rex constituitur & Aquisgrani coronatur, cum patre suo imperium adepturus.

Eo tempore dominus Conradus, Portuensis episcopus Cardinalis, in legacione sedis apostolice dirigitur in Almaniam pro negocio Terre Sancte, ut videlicet cruce signatos faciat crucem resumere & predicatorum instituat, qui alios ad crucem sumendam exhortentur. Et xiiii¹ kalendas Octobris Moguntinus archiepiscopus Erphordie in ecclesia sancti Petri ordines celebrauit, ac sequenti die dominica magistrum Conradum in Hylde[nshei]mensem² episcopum & Henricum in eiusdem cenobii abbatem consecrauit.¹ Et eodem anno Damiata perdita est.

Anno Domini M^oCC^oXXII^o Andreas, Pragensis episcopus, cum Gregorio cardinali de Crescencio supradicto reuersus de curia Romana in finibus Morauie in loco videlicet Srhticz per eundem cardinalem pacificatus est cum rege Boemorum & eius primatibus. Et per dictum cardinalem in Pragensi dyocesi relaxatum est ecclesiasticum interdictum. Quidam postmodum amici episcopi speciales sibi notificant regem ipsum et quosdam barones terre conspirasse in mortem illius. Quod audiens episcopus timore concussus Romam rediit, sed obiit anno sequenti, cuius caput de Cassamare ciuitate, vbi requiescit, translatum est postea necnon in muro sancti Wenceslai capelle / Pragensis ecclesie collocatum super altare sancte crucis, vbi crux aurea cernitur depicta. Item eodem anno Wladislaus frater regis Przemysl, dux Morauie, vitam suam finiendam in breui putans³ sic Wladislaum, juniorem filium suum, constituit in Morauie marchionem.

Anno³ Domini M^oCCXXIII^o Andreas episcopus Pra- A.D. 1223

¹ "xiii . . . consecrauit."¹ Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 225.

² MS. *Hyldemensem*. ³ MS. adds "*et*" superfluously.

⁴ "*Anno . . . successit*" (page 32, line 2). Based on *Letopisy České* (Eml. F.R.B. ii, 284).

gensis in exilio obiit, cui Peregrinus, Pragensis canonicus, xix episcopus successit, qui Romam citatus beneficio resignato, pontificalia tantum obtinuit.

Eodem anno Siffridus,¹ Moguntinus archiepiscopus, habuit synodum Erphordie in ecclesia beate Marie & instituit quod omne festum habens proprias laudes cum ix. lectionibus celebr[ar]etur.¹ Philippus, rex Francie, obiit, cui Ludouicus filius eius in regno successit.

A.D. 1224

Anno Domini M^oCC^oXXIII^o Wladislaus, marchio Moraue, filius quondam Wladislai regis Bœmie, qui fratri suo Przemyslone cessit de regno, mortuus est ii^o Idus Augusti & sepultus in monasterio Welehrad Cisterciensis ordinis, quod propriis sumptibus ad honorem Dei & matris eius construxit et copiose dotaui.

Eodem anno successit Peregrinus, Pragensis canonicus, Andree predicto episcopo, et factus est Pragensis episcopus xix, *ut predictum est.* Moguntinus² archiepiscopus Erphordie suspendit diuina a purificatione usque in Pascha & postea per septem dies in septimana reliquiarum.² Et tunc papa Honorius de episcopatu Pragensi ordinans misit archiepiscopo Moguntinensi tamquam metropolitano has sequentes litteras.

Honorius papa archiepiscopo Moguntinensi. Nimis graue dispendium³ . . . scintillula relucere. Datum Laterani xiiii⁴ kalendas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno nono & Domini M^oCC^oXXIII^o.

Archiepiscopus Moguntinus prescriptas litteras suscipiens in mandatis, statim denunciauit episcopo Peregrino & capitulo Pragensi, et ipse Peregrinus ad curiam se transferens, ut obediret summo pontifici, & demum de episcopatu deponitur.

Eodem anno Jacobus, Phillippi Falconis filius, episcopo Herbipolensi resignauit in curia Romana publico instrumento

¹ "Siffridus . . . celebr[ar]etur." ¹ Extract from C.S.P.E.M. 226.

² "Moguntinus . . . reliquiarum." ² Extract from C.S.P.E.M. 226.

³ E.R.B. i, 319. Honorius III upbraids the Archbishop of Mainz for consecrating Peregrinus as Bishop of Prague contrary to the papal instructions, and bids him to cause Peregrinus to proceed forthwith to Rome.

⁴ Erben gives the date as *xiii kalendas*.

super iurisdiccione, quam habebat in ecclesia Herbipoli, sub hac forma.

In nomine Domini. Amen. Anno incarnationis Christi millesimo CC^o vicesimo quarto, pontificatus Domini Honorii pape tercii anno nono, mense Nouembris die xxiii, indiccione tercia decima. Ego Jacobus Philippi Falconis nomine meo & Domini Philippi Falconis, patris mei, & de ipsius mandato & libera voluntate renuncio penitus & refuto tibi magistro Gotfrido procuratori Domini Chunradi, venerabilis patris Herbipolensis episcopi, nomine ipsius & successorum suorum recipienti in perpetuum, videlicet omne ius & omnes actiones, utiles & directas & exempciones, tacitas & expressas, generales et speciales, quascumque contra ipsum episcopum & ecclesiam suam aut aliam personam pro ipso predictus pater meus & ego aut heredes & successores nostri hactenus habuimus vel de cetero habere possemus occasione contractus vel instrumenti olim nobis confecti a Johanne Herbipolense, procuratore bone memorie O. Herbipolensis episcopi, predecessoris domini tui, super debito quod olim dictus Iohannes nomine predicti predecessoris domini tui in Romana curia contraxit a nobis, sicut ex publico instrumento Jacobi de Prenestin scriniarii ex litteris testimonialibus domini Benedicti, domini pape camerarii, necnon ex carta predicti Herbipolensis, predecessoris domini tui, de mutuo contrahendo euidencius apparebat, quod instrumentum et litteras tamquam vacuas & infectas ac nullius momenti tibi ad cautelam domini tui trado libere ac resigno. Cui itaque instrumento & litteris ac omni alii instrumento & scripto & dictis seu rogacionibus instrumenti in presenti nomine meo & predicti patris mei omnino renuncio, renuncians nichilominus illi | obligacioni & permissioni a te michi facte Fol. 275 prestito corporaliter iuramento, quod cum alio non contraheres nisi mecum mutuam pecuniam, secundum quod ab alio habere posses mutuum pro negociis domini tui in Romana curia procurandis. Renuncio eciam ipsi iuramento a te michi facto, ut deinceps liber & absolutus existas, promittens pro me & predicto domino Philippo, patre meo, tibi pro domino tuo Herbipolensi episcopo recipienti, quod de cetero occasione vel respectu

omnium predictorum contra ipsum episcopum & ecclesiam suam aut aliam personam pro ipso nullam movebimus questionem aut aliquam litis calumpniam faciemus. Hec enim omnia supradicta, ut dictum est, tibi, pro dicto episcopo & successoribus suis facio saluo per omnia predicto patri meo & michi nouo contractu vel instrumento nobis a te nomine domini tui facto super centum marcis sterllingorum, tum ratione compositionis super debito a predicto Johanne Herbipolensi contracto nobiscum inite, tum occasione mutui a nobis de nouo tibi nomine domini tui facti, sicut ex publico instrumento Richardi scriniarii euidenter apparet, ita quod huiusmodi refutacio quoad predictum debitum centum marcarum, prout ex nouo contractu noscitur apparere, nullum nobis valeat preiudicium generare. Et ego pro me & predicto Phillippo, patre meo, & heredibus nostris promitto tibi pro dicto domino Herbipolensi episcopo & successoribus suis & omni alia persona pro ipsis hanc refutationem & omnia supradicta rata & firma semper habere & non contravenire sub pena dupli, & pena soluta contractus in sua nichilominus firmitate permaneat. Et ego Philippus Falconis promitto sub obligacione & stipulacione predictis predictam refutationem seu promissionem & obligacionem & omnia supradicta rata & firma semper habere & inuolabiliter obseruare, nec ullo tempore contravenire sub pena dupli; & pena soluta hec omnia firma permaneant. Actum est autem hoc in ecclesia Lateranensi presentibus testibus infrascriptis ad hoc specialiter rogatis, scilicet magistro Gerhardo, in Romana curia advocato ts., Johanne Mathie campsore ts., Romano Cencii, Johannis Ruffi ts., Johanne Loffridi Danensi & Bonagura ts. Et ego Richardus, imperialis aule scriniarius, hanc cartam utriusque partis consensu scripsi & compleui rogatus.

A.D. 1225
Fol. 276

Anno Domini M^o CC^o XXV imperator Fridericus cum filia Johannis, regis Iherosolimitani, nupcias in Apulia | celebrauit, ex qua genuit Conradum postea regem. Ludouicus¹ autem, dux Bauarie, curator regis Henrici in rebus tam propriis quam imperialibus in Almania efficitur.¹ Hoc anno Ludouicus, lantgrauius Thuringie & maritus beate Elizabeth, collecto

¹ "Ludouicus . . . efficitur." ¹ Extract from U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 381).

copioso exercitu, profectus est in Poloniam & obsidione vallauit castrum Lubuz: quod & cepit, spoliisque diuisis inter milites reuersus est ad patriam & interim Henricus, filius Friderici imperatoris, rex est declaratus.

Anno Domini M^oCC^oXXVI^o ¹ per dominum papam A.D. 1226 *Honorium* Rome de episcopatu deponitur Pragensis episcopus Peregrinus. Cui Budiwoy, *alias Budislaus*, canonicus Pragensis, substituitur episcopus vicesimus. Eodem anno mense iii dictus Budiwoy moritur. Prefatus vero episcopus Peregrinus in domo fratrum Predicatorum aput sanctum Clementem in Praga, quam eodem anno fratres ipsi receperunt, traditur sepulture.

Eodem² anno sanctus Franciscus, ordinis Minorum princeps & pater, Christi stigmatibus insignitus & miraculis clarus migrat ad Christum iiii Nonas Octobris.²

Hoc eciam anno ³ de consensu regis Przemysl per Henricum, Moraue Marchionem, & alios magnates & proceres regni Boemie primogenitus regis Przemysl Wenceslaus in Boemie regem eligitur. Quam electionem Fridericus, Romanorum rex & imperator, tamquam rationabilem & validam de consilio principum imperii suis litteris roborauit, et Wenceslaum viuentem patre suo Przemysl regem / Boemie constituit, prout in subscripto Fol. 277 priuilegio declaratur, cuius tenor sequitur in hec verba.

Fridericus secundus, diuina fauente clemencia Romanorum rex semper augustus & rex Sicilie. Si in specialibus et expertis fidelibus et dilectis nostris gratiam facimus specialem, non est indignum sed consonat omnimodo

¹ MS. M^oCC^oXVI^o altered in later hand.

² Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 43): "*Anno Domini 1226 . . . beatus Franciscus . . . transiuit de hoc mundo . . . iv nonas Octobris . . . Christi stigmatibus insignitus et miraculorum gloria clarus.*" The wording in both passages is somewhat reminiscent of the Chronicle of Jordanus de Jano (chap. 50).

³ "*Hoc eciam anno.*" The year given by N.G. is as shown above, 1216, which is the right year for the imperial document which follows, but at the end of the document the year 1226 is given. For that document see E.R.B. i, 266, 267, in which Frederick II confirms the election of Wenceslaus as King of Bohemia.

Fol. 279

equitati. Ea propter vniuersis imperii fidelibus tam presentibus quam futuris in perpetuum volumus esse quod misso . . . / . . . recognoui. Acta sunt hec [anno] Dominice incarnationis millesimo CCXXVI^o, vii^o kalendas Maii,¹ indiccione iiii, regnante domino Friderico secundo, Dei gracia Romanorum rege semper augusto et rege Sicilie, anno Romani regni ipsius iiii^o et Sicilie xviii^o, feliciter. Amen. Datum aput Vlmam per manus Pertoldi de Neyph, imperialis aule prothonotarii, anno, mense et indictione pretitulatis.

A.D. 1227

Anno Domini M^oCCXXVII^o Iohannes Pragensis Scolasticus xiiii kalendas Januarii xxi^s Pragensis episcopus consecratur.

Eodem² anno Honorius papa tercius obiit mense Marcii, anno pontificatus sui decimo, mense septimo, xiii die ; sepelitur Rome in basilica sancte Marie Maioris ad Presepe. Cui successit Gregorius ix, nacione Anagninus e familia comitum, Innocencii tercii nepos, apud Septizodium pontifex creatus prius Hugolinus Hostiensis episcopus nominatus.² Fridericum³ imperatorem statim monuit sub anathematis pena, ut primo quoque tempore in Asiam cum exercitu proficisceretur recuperande Iherosolime causa. Promisit quidem Fridericus se id facturum atque omnibus crucesignatis mandauit, ut Brundusii ad certam diem cum armis adessent. Venerat illuc magna multitudo militum de Germania & precipue Ludouicus, lantgrauius Thuringie, qui Brundusii vna cum magna parte militum moritur quia dolo Friderici imperatoris pasagium impeditur, & cum esset milicia Christianorum ad LX milia, dissipata fuit³ & papa[sic]⁴ Honorii sententiam confirmauit. |

¹ Erben gives date as vii kal. Augusti. 1216. |

² "*Eodem . . . nominatus*" ² is based partly on U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 382) and partly on C.M.M.E., p. 652; but cf. also C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 44), in which it reappears almost verbatim and with the same mistakes: e.g. after "*e familia comitum*" a word, probably "*Signiae*," should be supplied; and "*Septizodium*" (in C.N.G. "*Septizodum*") is a corrupt form for "*Septizonium*," italice "*Septizonio*."

³ "*Fridericum . . . dissipata fuit*" ³ is based, sometimes verbatim, on C.M.M.E., pp. 653, 654. ⁴ MS. *papam* altered to *papa*.

Anno Domini M^oCCXXVIII^o illustris princeps Wenceslaus primogenitus, Przemysl siue Ottakaro rege Boemie patre mandante, vnctus est in regem Boemie per venerabilem patrem dominum Siffridum, archiepiscopum Maguntinum, cum sua coniuge Cunegunde regina in Pragensi ecclesia, dominica qua canitur Esto michi. Item eodem anno xvii kalendas Iulii capelle fit dedicacio Sancti Thome. Fol. 280
A.D. 1228

Hoc¹ quoque anno Gregorius papa ix personaliter Assisium veniens cum magna solempnitate canonizauit sanctum Franciscum xvi kalendas Augusti,¹ pontificatus sui anno secundo. Imperator² autem Fridericus, defuncta coniuge sua in puerperio, transfretauit & per Ciprum vsque Achon venit, ubi in magna gloria susceptus fuit & post paucos dies legatos soldani pacifice eum excipientes recepit.²

Anno Domini M^oCCXXIX Wenceslaus, rex iuuenis Boemie, totam Austriam a Crems vsque Vngariam cum armatorum multitudine per potenciam devastauit, Leupoldo duce Austrie cum imperatore Friderico in Apulia constituto et pacem inter Fridericum eundem et papam Gregorium statuente, incendiis pariter et rapinis, et oneratus multis spoliis Boemiam est reuersus. Mortuus est dictus Leupoldus in Apulia, ossibus in Austriam postea deportatis sepultis in claustro Lufeld, quod dictus dux Austrie propriis construxit expensis. A.D. 1229

Anno Domini M^oCCXXX Przemisl, alias Otakarus, rex Boemie tercius, obiit xviii^o kalendas Ianuarii et in Pragensi ecclesia sepelitur, / cui in regno successit iam coronatus suus filius Wenceslaus. A.D. 1230
Fol. 281

Eodem anno Sifridus,³ Maguntine sedis archiepiscopus, obiit in Erphordia ac ibidem honorifice sepultus in ecclesia Beate Virginis ab Engelberto, Nuwenburgensi episcopo. Cui successit Siffridus patruelis ipsius.³

¹ For "*Hoc . . . Augusti.*" ¹ Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 47), also C.M.M.E. p. 654.

² "*Imperator . . . recepit*" ² is a summary of passages in U.C. (P.SS. xxiii, 383).

³ "*Sifridus . . . ipsius.*" ³ Quoted from C.S.P.E.M., p. 228, which gives the name as Engelbardus.

A.D. 1231

Fol. 282

Anno Domini M^oCCXXXI^o mortuo Otakaro supra-
dicto dux Austrie Fridericus iniurias volens vlcisci, quas
Venceslaus rex aliquando intulit patri suo, cum Przemisl
marchione Morauie, fratre germano regis Venceslai, con-
federatus contra ipsum regem ambo suos congregauerunt
exercitus, quibus eciam multi amici sui, videlicet dux
Meranie, cum fratre suo marchione de Werd, Bamber-
gensis episcopus, comes de Tyrolis, Aquilegiensis
patriarcha, necnon ceteri plurimi principes Theutonie
congregati cum eis in auxilium venerunt. Et procedentes
ad castrum regis nomine Byetow, alias Vetow, prope
Boemiam, tamen infra Morauie limites constitutum, illud
vallabant, quod propter terrorem machinarum eis est
traditum. Quo habito, fingentes ducem Austrie grauiter
infirmari, spacio, per quod tribus diebus itinerando
venerant, regredi / endo vno die tantummodo redeunt
fugitiui, putantes regem Boemie hora die[i] tertia circa
Vetaw in camporum planicie eos velle cum exercitibus
invadere infinitis, audito strepitu tympanorum. Certum
quidem est, quod rex cum suo stetit exercitu sub silua
Boemica et Morauica prope Wetaw prudenter deliberans,
qualiter, cum siluam transiret, prelium inchoaret. Nam
et multi, qui cum eo fuerant, plus fratri suo Przemisl,
Morauie marchioni, fauebant, in exercitu suo habentes
cognatos pariter & amicos. Interea quidam nobilis miles
de Morauia nomine Boczek regi honorem hunc fecit.
Nam per montes et siluas prope ducis & marchionis
predictorum exercitus in aurora plura tympana fecit
sonari, quasi miliciam provocarent ad bellum. Quorum
strepitu dux & sui exercitus territi, quasi non essent
deinceps victuri, gressu concito fugierunt, pro occasione
fugiendi ducis infirmitatem, sicut predicitur, confingentes.

*Eodem anno¹ xv kalendas Nouembris beata Elizabeth
lantgrauia, illustris principis Ludouici lantgrauii vidua,
migravit¹ ad Christum apud opidum Marburc.*

¹ "Anno . . . migravit" ¹ closely resembles C.S.P.E.M. 229, but
that Chronicle gives date as xv kal. Decembr: it also resembles C.M.M.E.
655.

Anno Domini M°CCXXXII° sancta Elizabeth sanc- A.D. 1232
torum kathologo feliciter est asscripta.¹ Sed ² et fratres
Minores eodem anno domum receperunt in Praga.²

Anno Domini M°CCXXXIII° Fridericus imperator, A.D. 1233
de Apulia per mare descendens, venit Theutonium, &
quoniam filius suus Henricus, rex Almanie, contra ipsum
conspirauerat cum Lombardis, protinus cepit eum &
captium misit / in Apuliam, vbi in carceribus est Fol. 283
defunctus.

Anno Domini M°CCXXXIII° Fridericus imperator, A.D. 1234
ad suam curiam venientem in Augustam, regem Boemie
Wenceslaum cum principibus Almanie cum magno
honore suscepit & immensis dotaꝝ muneribus. Cui
dum volenti Boemiam redire cum aliis euxeniis xx
milia marcarum donauit, quas largiter statim distribuit.
Quod factum imperator & principes mirabantur, cum
rex de tantis diuiciis nichil sibi penitus reseruasset.

Eodem anno Fridericus dux Austrie ad eandem curiam
imperatoris vocatus non venit, ingratum reputans, quod
imperator generum suum Henricum, regem Almanie, vin-
culis tenuerat mancipatum. Vnde imperator ira motus
venit in Austriam, auferens duci Vyennam & alias
ciuitates, preter Nouam ciuitatem quam dux ipse per-
sonaliter viriliter defensauit. Imperator autem recedens
Vyennam & totam Austriam Boemie regis gubernaculo
recommisit.

Anno Domini M°CCXXXV° Fridericus imperator A.D. 1235
Apuliam rediit, sed et rex Boemie cognato suo Friderico,
Austrie duci, Vyennam et alias ciuitates restituit, et in
claustro Luh ante Brunnam sito sancti Benedicti firm-

¹ This date is in conflict with the statement later, assigning the canoniza-
tion of Saint Elizabeth to 1235, which is correct, and which agrees with the
statement in C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 57). This illustrates how N.G. sometimes
inserts from different sources dates or statements which are mutually in-
consistent.

² "Sed . . . Praga." ² This sentence resembles part of one of the
passages which Boehmer regards as derived from certain annals of the
Convent of Beneschau.

auerunt perpetuam amicitiam iuramentis. *Eodem anno canonizatur beata Elizabeth.*¹

A.D. 1236

Anno Domini M^o CCXXXVI obiit episcopus Johannes Pragensis xxi, xvii kalendas Septembris. Cui Burchardus successit scolasticus, episcopus Pragensis xxii.

Fol. 284

*Eodem*² *anno Christo deuota virgo domina Agnes, | soror Wenceslai regis, considerans, quod in naufraga vita presenti continue fluctibus nostre mortalitatis iactamur nec superna contemplari valemus propter tumultum mundanarum causarum, amore celestium ardencius inflammata, in Penthecoste presentibus septem episcopis & domino rege, fratre suo, ac regina cum multis principibus et baronibus, necnon innumera utriusque sexus diuersarum nacionum multitudine, spreto regni fastigio & omni gloria mundana contempta, cum septem nobilissimis regni sui virginibus, vt columba innocua de diluio nequam seculi ad archam sacre religionis sancte Clare in monasterium in honore Saluatoris mundi & sancti Francisci, quod propriis sumptibus pro sororibus fieri procurauit, ipsa conuolauit et usque ad finem vite sancte conuersacionis proposito perseuerauit, prout in legenda eiusdem virginis clarius patet.*²

A.D. 1237

Anno Domini millesimo CCXXXVII^o Przemysl, marchio Morauie, fugit in Vngariam a facie fratris sui, regis Boemie Wenceslai, defensoribus probis in castris relictis, qui regis potencie castra defendendo viriliter restiterunt. Vnde rex ante castra de lignis, lapidibus & argilla necnon fossatis optimis circumdata fieri iussit alia castra firmissima, per que statim castra cepit predicta, quoniam noua veterum vias totaliter precluserunt, ut non possent egredi milites vel intrare. Tandem vero rex fratrem suum Przemisl predictum, mediantibus regis Vngarie precibus, in suam recepit gratiam, ei provincias Opauiensem et Olomucensem pro vite necessitatibus, quibus con-

¹ See note 1, page 39.

² From "*eodem . . . patet.*" ² Cf. C.N.G. (A.F ii, pp. 56-58). It is based verbatim on the Latin Legend of B. Agnes (Bamberg. Misc. Hist. 146 E. vii, 19, edited W. W. Seton, fol. 170 v, 171 r), which is the document indicated by N. G. in the words "*prout in legenda eiusdem virginis clarius patet.*"

tentus fuerat, assignando. Qui postea viam est vniuerse carnis ingressus.

*Anno Domini*¹ *M^oCCXXXVIII^o per sanctissimum* / A.D. 1238
patrem Gregorium papam nonum confirmatus est ordo fratrum Fol. 285
*Cruciferorum cum stella rubea a sancte Agnetis mandato de nouo per fratres Minores creatus, videlicet Cruciferis & Stelliferis, quibus beata Agnes adhuc in seculo existens hospitale in pede pontis Pragensis in honore sancti Francisci edificauit & copiosissime de propriis bonis regalibus dotaui & ipsum hospitale admisit, ut ipsi debilibus & infirmis & omnibus miseris personis ibi receptis tam in temporalibus quam in spiritualibus fideliter necessaria ministrarent.*¹

*Eodem*² *anno Johannes de Plano Carpinis, ordinis Minorum natione Lombardus, minister Saxonie & Polonie, capitulum in Praga apud sanctum Iacobum tenuit.*²

Anno Domini millesimo CCXXXIX Burchardus, A.D. 1239
*Pragensis episcopus, obiit idus Septembris, cui successit Nicolaus, Pragensis canonicus, xxiii episcopus. Et Fridericus*³ *imperator a domino papa Gregorio ix in die Palmarum et subsequenter in cena Domini et in Pascha in ecclesia Lateranensi ex multis causis solempniter & publice excommunicatur, approbantibus cardinalibus vniuersis.*³

Anno Domini millesimo CCXL Constancia regina A.D. 1240
*Boemie, coniunx olim Przemisl regis, mater Wenceslai regis obiit iii kalendas*⁴ *Decembris. Hec Constancia fundauit in Morauia duo monasteria, videlicet in Tuschnowicz, vbi corporaliter requiescit, et in Osslaw. Hec ambo monasteria sunt monialium Cisterciensis ordinis.*

¹ This passage down to "*ministrarent*"¹ is based on a passage in the Latin Legend of B. Agnes. It appears also in C.N.G. (A.F. ii, pp. 57 and 59), and also in N. G.'s copy of the Chron. xxiv Gen. (A.F. iii, p. 184). Boehmer quotes it as one of the passages which he attributes to the Annals of Beneschau.

² "*eodem . . . tenuit.*"² Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 59). This also is, according to Boehmer, one of the Beneschau fragments.

³ "*Fridericus . . . vniuersis.*"³ Extracted from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 393).

⁴ The *textus receptus* of Pulkava generally reads *iii idus*, but Clm. 476 reads *iii kalendas*.

Fol. 286

Item in Morauia hec castra fundauit : Godin, Brzetislaw alias Leuchtemburg, et Bystrzicz. Item construxit in Vngaria ciuitatem Tirnaw, que wlgari Vngarico Sambach Constancie nuncupatur. Item in / Vngaria Rotenstein castrum construxit. Eodem anno mortuus est Robertus, Olomuczensis episcopus.

A.D. 1241

Anno Domini millesimo CCXLI^o pagani, qui Thartari dicuntur, totam Russiam & alia multa regna fidelium destruunt & devastant. Qui eciam Colomannum, fratrem regis Vngarie, per sagittam inflicto wlnere necauerunt et caput Henrico, duci Polonie, miserabiliter amputantes secum illud duxerunt. De cuius maxima multitudine paucissimi nobiles euaserunt, ceteris militibus & clientibus interemptis. Et cum Wenceslaus, rex Boemie gloriosus, cum suis exercitibus propinquaret, percipientes hoc Thartari de Polonia fugierunt, et festinantes per fines Moraue, cupientes in Vngariam venire ad socios, dimidium Moraue similiter & Austrie tam in villis quam in campis viros & feminas occiderunt, Vngarie rege per eos in maritima profugato. Moritur¹ eodem anno *xi kalendas Septembris* papa Gregorius, Friderico imperatore in excommunicationis sententia perdurante.¹ Eodem *eciam* anno iii Nonas Octobris facta est post meridiem solis eclipsis. /

A.D. 1242
Fol. 287

Anno Domini M^oCCXLII^o dux Austrie Fridericus circa Snoyem cum suo exercitu vastauit Morauiam incendiis et rapinis, sed Wenczeslao, rege Bohemie, sibi hostiliter occurrente, fuge presidio se comisit. *Item eodem anno Albertus,*² *ultimus comes de Pogen, obiit xviii kalendas Februarii.*² *Hic cum provinciam sibi subiectam per tyrannidem taliter devastasset, ut hominibus discedentibus de terra illa fere inhabitabilis fieret & paucissima in ea possent peccora inueniri, mors eius digna est per talis visionis indicium*

¹ "Moritur . . . perdurante."¹ Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 63). Here N.G. quotes in his own Chronicle a phrase from the Pulkava portion of the Maior Cronica. The exact date, added by N.G., is given in C.S.P.E.M., p. 236.

² "Albertus . . . Februarii."² Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 394).

premonstrata. Nam circa Pascha in parrochia Chelhpergh referente Wilperto, plebano de Chunzen, quedam mulier nomine Benedicta vidit in visione sanctum Mauricium cum multo & pulchro comitatu adire quoddam iudicium, ubi Domino fecit querimoniam & de predicto comite petiit vindictam fieri. Sed Mater Dei usque ad festum purificationis sibi inducias impetrauit, ut idem comes medio tempore suam maliciam refrenaret. Quod cum non faceret, licet ab Ottone, duce Bauarie, fratre suo ex parte matris moneretur, ut se corrigeret, in mense Februario die qua supra ab hac vita miserabiliter est subtractus. Et leticia, quam predictus Wilpertus claustris & provincie fecerat, est cognita per effectum. Item digittus sancti Nicolai, episcopi & confessoris, apportatur in Pragam ad sanctum Franciscum. Item Henricus de Cantania, notarius imperatoris, eligitur in episcopum Bambergensem.

Anno Domini MCCXLIII^o Soldanus Babilonie cum A.D. 1243 maxima multitudine paganorum, qui Corsimi dicuntur, Terram Sanctam intrauit, & ciuitatem Ierusalem cum sepulchro Dominico devastauit, non parcens etati uel sexui, sed omnes indifferenter occidit.

Anno Domini MCCXLIIII Synibaldus,¹ diaconus car- A.D. 1244 dinalis, in papam eligitur, dominus Innocencius quartus est vocatus.¹ Dux Austrie Fridericus, dictus Bellicosus, regem Bohemie Wenczeslaum invitauit ad locum amenissimum, qui dicitur Schecz, in Morauię & Austrie finibus constitutum, causa secum experiendi belli fortunam, post festum sancte Katherine in die tertia proxima; quo si non veniret, deberet ab eo priuilegium recipere huius modi sub tenore. "Ego Wenceslaus rex Boemie non sum natus legittime, sed filius publice meretricis, et hoc protestatus sum, protestor, & quamdiu vixero, protestabor. Et ne vmquam possim hoc vel mei successores negare, Fridericus, dux Austrie gloriosus, super hoc michi necnon successoribus meis priuilegium dedit in presencia nobilium regni mei & suorum omnium ministerialium sui sigilli munimine roboratum ad perpetuam noticiam

¹ "Synibaldus . . . vocatus."¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 394), but the date there is 1243, not 1244.

Fol. 288

singulorum Christi fidelium et eciam futurorum." Et in fine adiecit: "quod si ego Fridericus, dux Austrie, ad dictum locum in prefixo die non venero, a te, domine Rex, prefatum priuilegium [in] meam & meorum successorum confusionem & infamiam & tocius ducatus mei recipiam obprobrium sempiternum." Cumque rex Boemie venisset ad locum in termino constituto, dux primo et secundo / die per se seu sufficientem procuratorem non comparuit, sed exercitu viso regis a longe, cum dux fuge presidio regis manus euaserit & ab eo priuilegium, quod iuramento prestito recipere promiserat, non recepit, cum suis proceribus infamiam tacite reportauit. Nam festinans quantocius transiuit Danubium, ipsum rege continuo subsequente, propter quod rex, Austria penitus deuastata, cum victorie gloria Boemiam est reuersus.

A.D. 1245

Anno¹ Domini MCCXLV° dominus papa Innocencius quartus in Lugduno generale concilium celebrauit, in quo imperatorem per diffinitiuam deposuit sententiam, F[r]idericum ipsum a communione fidelium remouendo. Sed et lantgrauius Turingie Henricus in Almanie regem eligitur. In eodem concilio Conradus de episcopatu Olomuczensi depositus est, quem regis Boemie suffultus potencia occupauerat violenter. In cuius locum provisione domini pape dominus Bruno episcopus subrogatur.¹

A.D. 1246

Anno Domini MCCXLVI *dux Austrie Fridericus pugnans cum Bela iiii, rege Vngarie, in die sancti Viti cum lancea per faciem transfossus, de equo corruens oppressus equorum tumultu interemptus est. Mater eius domina Theodora pre tristitia hec audiens, octaua die defuncta est. Igitur duce Austrie Friderico perempto, filia senioris fratris sui Henrici, cognomento Crudelis quondam ducis Austrie, filio regis Boemie Wladislao traditur in vxorem, que dicta est Gertrudis & per eam Friderico premortuo in*

¹ "Anno . . . subrogatur."¹ The Pulkava Chronicle is based on one of the continuations of Cosmas (Letopisy České 1196–1278), but N.G. was merely using Pulkava. The same applies to a good many other passages in Pulkava.

Austrie ducatu successit. Eodem tempore dux Mesko Polonie moritur, cui dictus Wladislaus, filius regis Boemie, per electionem nobilium successit similiter in ducatu Polonie. Eodem anno dum dictus Conradus de Olomucensi episcopatu nollet cedere, Morauia tota ecclesiastico supponitur interdicto.

Anno Domini MCCXLVII Wladislaus, *predictus* filius regis Boemie Wenczeslai, moritur iii^o nonas Januarii, qui Friderico successerat in ducatu Austrie, ut prefertur, et Polonie, cui Przemisl, frater eius, filius Wenceslai regis, in predictis successit ducatibus. Hoc anno lantgravius¹ Turingie Henricus electus in regem Almanie, *Conradum regem filium Friderici imperatoris, cum suo exercitu adiutorio Ludouici ducis Bauarie, sororii sui, apud Franckfurt ignominiose fugauit & ipse Henricus eodem anno profluuio ventris sine herede moritur & in Ysanach sepelitur.*¹ Et Wilhelmus de Hollandia subrogatur. *Item Ludouicus, rex Francorum, copioso Christianorum exercitu, cum Roberto & Karolo fratribus contra Sarracenos / in Syriam nauigauit.* Fol. 289 A.D. 1247

Anno Domini MCCXLVIII^o Wenceslaus, illustris rex Boemie, sororio suo Vlrico, filio ducis Carinthie, cui sicut ipsimet regi obediebant Moraui, precepit, ut Morauorum exercitu congregato intraret Austriam manu potenti, mittens sibi mille Theutonicos armatos in auxilium, quibus sufficiens stipendium deputauit. Postquam autem Henricus² ducellus fere cum iiii milibus armatorum non longe staret a metis Morauie cum suis in quadam valle, & tentoriis ibi fixis noctem perageret, in ortu solis multis adhuc dormientibus, nec de rumoribus, qui de duce Austrie dicebantur, curantibus, dux ipse cum maximo sagittariorum impetu predictorum tentoria circumdedit. Mox quoque ducellum Vlricum sine armis fugientem propria manu cepit, cum suis diffugientes alios inermes hinc inde protinus apprehendens, quos fecit

¹ “lantgravius . . . sepelitur.”¹ Based on C.M.M.E., p. 662.

² The sense here requires that the name should be “Vlricus,” not “Henricus.” It is significant that Clm. 476 also reads “Henricus.”

deduci Austriam vinculatos, quibusdam repugnantibus occisis crudeliter, quibusdam vero rebus suis relictis presidio fuge se comittentes [*sic*]. Illi autem, qui captiui fuerant ex eis, nonnulli, ne de cetero Austriam invadant, nasis & naribus sunt truncati. Res quoque Morauorum ducis Austrie milites potiti victoria diuiserunt. Quidam etiam nobiles de Morauia pecunia duci data carceres euaserunt. Sed castra regis Boemie, que tunc possidebant, nolentes tradere, quamvis in maximo frigore portarentur nudi ante castra predicta, ymo fuit cuidam domino Czirgoni oculus sinister erutus, eo quod castrum Madberg tradere recusaret, potius mori cupiens quam circa bona domini sui perfidiam perpetrare. Item eodem anno, procurante hoste humani generis, dissensionis materia suboritur inter Wenceslaum regem Boemie necnon filium suum Przemislonem tam magna, quod pater coactus est filio suo resignare [*coronam*],¹ sibi castris Zwyckow, alias Klingenberg, Loket alias Elbogen & Ponte tantummodo reservatis. Sed quia de iure per metum iuramentum extortum non obligat, pater ipse pactis huiusmodi postea acquiescere noluit. Hoc tempore nobilis Borsso de Ossyck alias de Rissenberg, qui de parte patris fuerat, tenens castrum Pontense Przemislone [viriliter]² resistebat, adeo quod Przemisl, magno congregato exercitu, dictum castrum Pontense fortiter obsideret. Interim Borsso cum dominis de Swamberg & Lemberg exercitu similiter congregato tam Boemorum, qui partem regis adhuc fouebant, quam Theutonicorum de Missna, dictum Przemislonem invadens hostiliter noctis tempore de suis plurimis interfectis / Przemislonem necnon suos dormientes & nudos in fugam conuertit. Tandem rex ipse Wenceslaus, congregata milicie de Austria multitudine copiosa, paulatim intrat cautus ad ciuitatem Pragensem & ea capta filium profugauit. Post multa demum placita

Fol. 290

¹ The word "*coronam*," which is needed for the sense, is supplied from the standard text of Pulkava, but it is again significant that Clm. 476 also omits it.

² MS. *videliter* [*sic*]. But here Clm. 476 is quite accurate.

totum regnum Boemie recuperavit & terram. Sed & filius patris gracie reformatus illum accedens, eum de suo & suorum statu alloqui cupiebat, quem in quodam castro Tirsaw rex capi faciens causa correccionis in Przimdam captiuatum precepit deduci. Postquam autem pater filii humilacionem cognosceret, intelligens, quod non tantum filius, quantum eius iniqui consilarii rei forent, post paucos dies filio dimisso de vinculis, consiliarios malos nonnullos in monte Petrino cum assere capitibus fecit truncari, sed et alios in ciuitate Pragensi rotarum excitiis deputabat: inter quos fuit principalis Stiborius dictus Mudrahlawa, qui sicut predicitur, in monte Petrino priuatus est capite. Rex autem dedit filio Morauiam, et vixerunt deinceps pater cum filio quo pater ad vixerat in concordia vnione.¹

Anno Domini MCCXLIX^o Nicolaus, Pragensis episcopus, custodie deputatus a pulsacione campanarum suspendit ecclesias, eis ornatus sollempnes similiter interdicens, duabus tantum campanis minimis ad pulsandum necessariis & ornatu quadragesimali ad officium pro festo concessis. Qui episcopus vii kalendas Aprilis a vinculis est solutus. *Ludouicus,² rex Francie, Damiatam ciuitatem Sarracenorum fortissimam, in octaua Sancte Trinitatis miraculose cepit.*

Anno Domini MCCL^o Ludouicus, rex Francie, a Sarra-
cenis captus, Damiatam & alias municiones, quas priori anno cepit, reddere cogitur² & Margaretha, vxor eius, capto rege Ludouico, viro suo, filium apud Damiatam peperit, quem Tristannum nominauit. Robertus² eciam, frater regis, cum multis occubuit.² Item in Boemia vi^o nonas Iulii grando magna cecidit post meridiem, que magna dampna segetibus, hominibus intulit & iumentis, que eciam per septem dies indissolubilis perdurauit mire magnitudinis formam exprimens triangularem, quam statim nimia pluue invndacio est secuta.

¹ Clm. reads "unionem."

² For "Ludouicus . . . reddere cogitur" & "Robertus . . . occubuit"² Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 72). The passage is based on H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 395).

De acquisitione Austrie.

A.D. 1251

Anno Domini MCCLI^o Przemysl, marchio Morauie, filius Wenceslai illustris regis Boemie, terras Austriam et Stiriam heredem proprium non habentes de prouido patris consilio sine laboribus & effusione sanguinis suo dominio subiugauit, procurans provisione laudabili pacem talem, qualis antea dicitur non fuisse, malignorum audaciam reprimendo. /

Fol. 291

Et ut illos ducatus hereditario iure de cetero cum suis posset liberis possidere, Leupoldi, quondam ducis Austrie & Stirie gloriosi, filiam viduam nomine Margaretham, quam Henricus, quondam rex Almanie, filius imperatoris Friderici habuerat prius vxorem, sibi de patris consilio matrimonio copulauit. *Chunradus*¹ rex, *filius Friderici imperatoris, in Natiuitate Domini Ratispone fuit, ubi, quia iam possessiones episcopi & ministerialium Ratisponensium incendiis vastauerat, vix mortem euasit. Interea circa festum Epiphanie Wenceslaus, rex Boemie, Boemorum & Morauorum exercitu congregato, misit filium suum Przemysl Bauariam & magnam eius partem vastauit in marchia Chambensi.*¹ Tandem cum duce Bawarie treugis firmatis non sine hominum illorum magno dispendio Boemiam est reuersus. Eodem anno xviii kalendas Februarii processione solempni cleri & populi, reliquie, quas dominus papa misit Agneti, sorori regis Wenceslai, solempni cum reuerencia sunt suscepte. *Mors*² *Friderici propallatur & Chunrad [sic] rex, filius eius, ad partes Reni festinat. Item dominus papa Innocencius in Cena Domini Wilhelmum, comitem Hollandie, iamdudum a quibusdam principibus in Romanum regem electum multis episcopis presentibus apud Lugdunum, confirmat et statim se transfert ad Ytaliam de Lugduno, ubi iam fere viii annis continue fecerat mansionem.*² Bertholdus, Pataviensis electus, ordines diaconatus ac sacerdocii & consecracionem episcopalem in Boemia recepit ab episcopis

¹ "*Chunradus . . . Chambensi.*"¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 395).

² "*Mors . . . mansionem.*"² Ibid. 395.

Olomucensi videlicet & Pragensi. Item castrum¹ in Taispach a Ludouico, duce Bawarie, nocte per insidias pro parte captum & pro parte obsessum destruitur, & fossata eius valde profunda complanantur. Ex hoc Bawaria in estate pro magna parte incendiis flagrat, Boemis partem Alberti, Ratisponensis episcopi, adiuvantibus contra duces. Chunradus rex in festo apostolorum Petri & Pauli cum Ottone, duce Bauarie, apud Chambe venit, quos rex Boemie videre contempsit & Otto dux castrum & opidum in Dingolzing construere fecit. Eodem anno Chunradus rex in autumpno intrat Apuliam & ibidem fere totum regnum paternum potenter possedit, domino Innocencio papa tunc Perusii comorante nec prohibere valente, & Wilhelmus, rex Romanorum, de comitissa Flandrie gloriose triumphat.¹

Anno Domini MCCLII^o rex Vngarie Bela nomine, A.D. 1252 cum violenter non posset Stiriam & Austriam alias occupare, per paganos, qui Cumani vocantur, in tota Austria necnon Moravia maximam stragem fecit tam in populo quam in clero. Vnde dicti Cumani mulieres & viros cum suis paruulis secum ducunt ad propria captiuatos, in seruitutem ipsos perpetuam redigentes. Eodem anno Przemisl, filius regis Wenceslai, de quo supra fit mentio, nupcias celebravit in Haimburg, ducens Margaretham Fol. 292 viduam, filiam quondam Leupoldi, ducis Austrie, legitimam in vxorem. Que cum fuisset sterilis, obprobrium sterilitatis asscripsit marito, quod Przemysl maritus eius intelligens ait eidem: "Da mihi vnam de tuis puellis, [et]experieris meam potenciam vel impotenciam infra annum." Qua consenciente, tulit Przemisl vnam de illis, quam pre ceteris diligebat, filiam domini de Kunring de Austria, ex qua primo anno generavit filium nomine Nicolaum, quem postea fecit ducem Opaue. Nam antea spectavit Opauia ad Morauiam, sed data fuit Nicolao, ut a regno Boemie in feodum dependeat perpetuis temporibus affuturis. Generavit insuper ex eadem postea tres filias, quarum vnam dedit domino Nicolao de Strakonicz, secundam vero [domino] de Wartemberg de Durren-

¹ "Castrum . . . triumphat." ¹ H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 395).

hulcz, terciam vero dedit domino Wockoni de Crawar. Et sic sterilitatis obprobrium prius marito impositum est asscriptum vxori. Quibus sic actis, compertum est Margaretham prefatam post obitum viri sui Henrici predicti monacham fuisse professam ordinis sanctimonialium fratrum Predicatorum monasterii Treuerensis & absque dispensacione sedis apostolice Przemysel predicto nupsisse. Celebratur igitur auctoritate apostolica diuorcium inter eos, et ipsa separata taliter a viro suo monasterium reingreditur, ordinem & habitum reassumens. Et ne regnum Boemie legitimo careret herede, prefatus Przemisl Cunegundem, filiam Rotislai, imperatoris Bulgarie, & Anne vxoris sue, filie Bele regis Vngarie, in castro Possen duxit vxorem & secum Pragam adduxit, prout inferius hec historia lacijs describetur.

Eodem anno idus Junii Pomneno, regis iudice, coram crucifixo in ecclesia sancti Georgii Prage oracionem suam cum deuocionis studio faciente, de crucifixi pede sanguis profluxit, quem manu sua dictus iudex extersit. Hoc anno xii kalendas Junii hospitale fundatum est in pede pontis Pragensis ad honorem sancti Spiritus per sanctam Agnethem predictam, in quo posuit cum stella Cruciferos et ibidem est caput tocius eiusdem ordinis. Fundauit etiam dicta Agnes monasterium sancte Clare, sicut superius est expressum.

De plagis in Morauiam inflictis ab infidelibus & de obitu Venceslai regis.

A.D. 1253

Anno Domini MCCLIII^o rex Vngarie cum paganis Cumanis totam Morauiam castris exceptis & muratis ciuitatibus devastauit incendiis & rapinis, viros ac mulieres cum infantibus occidi faciens per paganos, pluribus sine differentia sexus vel etatis, cum ecclesiarum campanis, sanctorum reliquiis et altarium ornatibus in Christianice religionis obprobrium, infra treugas pacis inter dictum regem & ducem Austrie iuramentis firmatas,¹ in Vngariam asportatis, iuramentum suum / violando. Australes vero, Stirienses pariter & Moraui dicto regi Vngarie dampnum non modicum intulerunt, regnum

Fol. 293

¹ MS. *firmitis*.

ipsius & amicorum suorum provincias devastantes. Otto¹ itaque, dux Bawarie, volens cum Henrico, filio suo, socero eius occurrere Bele, regi predicto, a municionibus & militibus superioris Austrie prepeditur. Tunc auxilio Meinhardi, comitis Gorcie, & Ezilini nobilis de Taruisio Henricus, filius Ottonis ducis, per vallem Tridentinam vadit in Vngariam ad socerum suum Belam regem.¹ Eodem anno timor magnus super Boemos irruit propter potenciam Cumanorum & aliorum confluencium, quorum impetum rex Venczeslaus preueniens fecit ciuitatem Pragensem muris firmari, necnon monasterium Cruciferorum cum alba cruce in pede pontis Pragensis manencium, expensas colligens in vino, melle, victualibus et frumento, muniens castrum Pragense contra impetum infidelium predictorum. Moniales vero sancti Georgii coguntur in ciuitate morari, suo monasterio derelicto. Otto² vero, dux Bauarie, nouam mone-
tam in Lanczhut cudere fecit circa initium messis, mandans ipsos denarios & non alios recipi in toto suo districtu.² Hoc anno x kalendas Octobris obiit Wenczeslaus, rex Boemie gloriosus, & sepultus est in monasterio sancti Francisci predicto, quod olim ipse fundauerat cum sorore sua sancta Agnethe. Hic rex clara dignus memoria aliquando, dum viueret, insequendo feras per densas siluas oculum perdiderat ramusculi lesione, propter quod vite sue temporibus monoculus permanebat, regnauitque feliciter in Boemia annis xxiiii & viii mensibus; cui filius suus Przemisl, heres unicus, reuersus de Austria successit in regno xvi kalendas Nouembris in sede regni sui honorifice collocatus. Otto autem,³ Bauarie dux, in principio sui regiminis princeps mansuetus & seuerus iudex postea propter fauorem, quem impendere videbatur Friderico quondam imperatori & Chunrado, filio eius, ab Innocencio papa iiii^o & episcopis iam diu & sepe excommunicatus persequi cepit clerum & mala malis addens. Tunc mense Nouembri

¹ "Otto . . . regem." ¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 395-396).

² "Otto vero . . . districtu." ² Ibid. 395.

³ "Otto autem . . . finiuit" (page 52, line 26). Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 396).

Fol. 294

famosus ille predicator frater Bertholdus, ordinis Minorum, in Lanczhut officium predicationis exercebat & morabatur in castro cum duce predicto, cupiens eum inducere ad obedientiam ecclesie & suum erga ecclesias & clerum animum mitigare, sed parum profecit. Supervenit tunc eiam quidam pauper rusticellus, asserens se in nocte preteriti festi sancti Michaelis raptum & ductum ad tribunal iudicii cuiusdam, ubi audisset & vidisset, quod ad querimoniam sanctorum sententia mortis data esset in Ottonem ducem & ceteros principes pacis turbatores & ecclesiarum ac pauperum vastatores. Asserebat eiam, quod sub pena mortis a sanctis ex parte Dei sibi esset iniunctum, ut hec duci & aliis principibus nunciare deberet; quod si non admitteretur, deberet aliis propallare. Is igitur homuncio, cum non fuisset admissus ad presenciam ducis, predicto fratri Bertholdo & aliis quibusque propalavit. Sed et sexto die ante diem obitus ducis idem homo venit ad monasterium Altahense & dixit H[ermanno] abbati & Alberto abbati de Meten ex parte illius iudicii, quod quia non admitteretur talia manifestare, dicti abbates cum Henrico, abbate de Ebersperg, deberent intimare duci prenominato, quod nisi citius monetam nouam destrueret & resipisceret a vexacione pauperum & ecclesiarum, mortis sententiam esset in breui subiturus. Cuius visionis efficaciam sepedictus dux est expertus. Nam in vigilia S. Andree, cum sero cum uxore & familiaribus suis valde iocundus esset, presentem vitam eadem nocte subitanee finiuit.

Eodem anno viii kalendas Aprilis canonisatus est sanctus Petrus martyr de ordine Predicatorum.. Eodem¹ quoque anno dominus Innocencius iiii Assisii in conuentu sancti Francisci residens ex deuocione beatam Claram grauiter infirmam cum cardinalibus visitauit & ad invicem de salute anime locuti sunt. Et post breve tempus ingrauescente infirmitate post Christi & eius matris cum virginum comitatu visitacionem ancilla Christi Clara diem clausit extremum. Cuius exequiis dominus papa cum cardinalibus affuit: eiam missam de

¹ "Eodem . . . dedicata" (page 53, line 9). Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 73). Cf. also A.F. iii, p. 276 for same words about S. Stanislaus, thus suggesting that N.G. was quoting from the Chron. xxiv Generals.

virginibus dicere precepit, quasi ipsam canonisare ante exequias videretur. Sed domino Rainaldo, protectore ordinis, dicente, quod in talibus morosius est agendum, missa de mortuis dicitur & per protectorem predicantem vita eius mirabilis predicatur. Anno prefato canonisatus est etiam gloriosus martyr Stanislaus, Cracouiensis ecclesie [episcopus] in Polonia xv kalendas Octobris in conuentu Assisii, & ob eius memoriam ad honorem eiusdem sancti ibi capella in alto est dedicata. Eodemque anno de Cracouia xi kalendas Nouembris eiusdem sancti Stanislai martyris sunt allate reliquie & in ecclesia Pragensi cum solempni processione suscepte. Ottone,¹ duce Bauarie, defuncto, dominus Ludouicus dux, adhuc fratre suo Henrico absente & in Vngaria existente, concordiam facit cum Philippo, electo Salzburgensi & Alberto, episcopo Ratisponensi, & diuina jam per multos annos suspensa in illa diocesi relaxantur. Cunradus | rex, Neapoli expugnata & muris eius ad terram Fol. 295 prostratis, homo seuerus sed minus prouidus & ecclesie inobediens, ibidem per tempus mansit. Henricus, dux Bauarie, auxilio domini Philippi Salczburgensis electi, de Vngaria reuertitur, & ambo duces ad consilium domini Henrici, episcopi Bambergensis, suum regunt concorditer principatum. Eodemque anno sterilitas frugum magna fuit & maxime circa Danubium.¹

Anno Domini MCCLIIII^o xix kalendas Januarii A.D. 1254 princeps Bohemie Przemisl, filius quondam Wenczeslai regis Boemie, signo crucis assumpto contra Prutenos cum nobilium Boemie, Morauie & Austrie multitudine copiosa cum infidelibus pugnaturus, postquam inter eum & regem Vngarie pacis esset tranquillitas reformata, Prussiam processit in Wratislauia domini Natalicium sollemnisans. Ad eum venit ibidem Brandenburgensis marchio cum exercitu suo; ambo pariter transeunt. Eodem² anno Cunradus rex prius in vigilia Ascencionis

¹ "Ottone, duce . . . circa Danubium." ¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 396).

² "Eodem . . . successit" (page 54, line 5). Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 396). Cf. also C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 74) for the sentence "eodem . . . successit."

mortuus est Neapoli; veneno dicitur extinctus a fratre suo Manfredo procurante. Mortuo Conrado rege, Innocencius papa fines Sicilie ingreditur & Neapoli moratur. Eodemque anno idem Innocencius papa iiii in festo sancte Lucie obiit, cui Alexander papa successit.

A.D. 1255

Anno Domini M^o CCLV Vilhelmus, rex Romanorum, Almanie dum esset in expeditione, a Frisionibus est occisus, cum eos et eorum terram suo dominio subiugasset. Eodem anno princeps Boemie Przemisl, cum Brunone, episcopo Olomuczensi, necnon Brandenburgensis marchio, dicti regis sororius, Prussiam potenter ingressi, hostiliter vastauerunt eandem incendiis & rapinis, multis occisis, non parcens [*sic*] sexui vel etati. Potentes autem & maiores Prusie diuino, ut credimus, timore concussi, nomen principis Boemie audientes cum omni humilitate venerunt ad eum, se dantes sibi cum rebus omnibus, colla sua quoque catholice fidei submittentes. Quos gloriosus princeps benigne suscipiens ad baptismi gratiam benignis suasionibus invitauit. Vnde duo duces Prussie per Brunonem, Olomucensem episcopum, flumine sacri baptismatis sunt mundati; potenciolem ex illis dictus princeps Bohemie de sacro / fonte leuavit, sibi nomen suum Otakarum imponendo. Alium vero Brandenburgensis marchio suscepit de fonte et cum suo nomine Ottonem appellauit. Inde plures nobiles alios multos leuantes de baptismo, suis baptisatos nominibus appellarunt, induentes eos suis vestibus preciosis. Procedens inde princeps Boemie magnificus vltra ripam fluminis Pregor ad montem quendam devenit, in quo rex Przemisl castrum & ciuitatem fundauit, imponens in sui memoriam eis hoc nomen a sua regia dignitate, videlicet vocans Montem Regalem, alias Kunigsparg in wlgari, construens nichilominus ibidem ecclesiam kathedralem in honore sancti Adalberti martyris, patroni Boemie, secundi quondam Pragensis episcopi, qui coronam martirii dudum a Prutenis suscepit, nominans illius ecclesie diocesim Sambiensem. Et ex quo Przemisl, rex Boemie, potenter hec fecerat, prefata ciuitas Kunigsparg cum tota provincia

Fol. 296

Sambiensi, quociens aduersus paganos procedunt, vna cum marascallo Prussie regale Boemie banderium deferentes sub eo primam tenent aciem contra hostes in testimonium premissorum. Similiter aliam ciuitatem per duas dietas a Kunigsberg Bruno, Olomucensis episcopus, regis suffultus auxilio, de nouo construxit a suo nomine sibi nomen imponens Brunsperg videlicet, quod mons Brunonis dicitur, instituens in eadem provincia pro roboracione fidelium et dilatacione fidei Christiane kathedralem ecclesiam Wariniensem. Predictae due ecclesie kathedrales Rygensi metropoli sunt subiecte. Instaurauit etiam dictus rex Boemie municiones alias plurimas fidelium in tutelam. Quibus confirmatis in fide necnon ab eis receptis obsidibus, ne redirent ad vomitum, comissa nichilominus terra & populo in manus Cruciferorum de domo Theutonica. Anno in partibus illis peracto salubriter, ut prefertur, ad propria predicti omnes cum gaudio sunt reuersi.

Anno Domini¹ M^oCCLVI^o Alexander papa quartus A.D. 1256 quandam nouam religionem, que dicitur Beatorum Martirum, confirmauit, cuius ordinis caput et fratres sunt apud Sanctam Crucem in ciuitate Pragensi.¹

Eodem² anno Bernhardus, dux Karinthie, obiit; cui Vlricus filius eius in ducatu successit.² Et etiam eodem anno Ludouicus,³ dux Bawarie, & Palatinus Reni, Mariam, primam uxorem suam / filiam ducis Brabancie sororem Fol. 297 Henrici, lantgrauii Hassie, per infamiam adulterii in Werda Sweuica decollari innocenter iussit. Pro emenda vero occise uxoris abbaciam in Furstenfeld ordinis Cisterciensis fundauit³ & monasterium fratrum Minorum in Ingelstat, opido Bauarie, iníciauit ac fundum dedit.

¹ This passage "*Anno . . . Pragensi*"¹ and the passage ¹ "*Anno . . . redierunt*" (page 56, lines 1-26), are contained in the standard text of Pulkava, but it is noticeable that they are *not* in the text of Pulkava in Clm. 476. Both passages are based upon the continuation of Cosmas, 1196-1278 (F.R.B. ii).

² "*Eodem . . . successit.*"² Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 397).

³ "*Ludouicus . . . fundauit.*"³ Extract from A.R.C.G., 534.

A.D. 1257

Anno Domini M^oCCLVII in mense Septembri princeps Boemie Przemisl, postquam de Prussia reuersus Austriam peruenisset & aliquam diu stetisset ibidem transiuissetque postea Boemiam, Margaretha, consors eius, ipsum apparatu magnifico [est] subsecuta. Conradus quoque, Coloniensis archiepiscopus, Pragam ad regem veniens super quibusdam arduis imperii negociis secum tractans recessit¹ honoratus a rege. Idem rex assumens sibi nonnullos iuuenes minus prudentes, senioribus irrequisitis baronibus intrauit Bawariam et cum eam vsque in Lanczhut devastasset spoliis & rapinis, in reditu pontem super Enum factum de lignis simplicibus cum sibi familiaribus aliquibus transiens, statim sub militibus eum sequentibus pons ruit confractus. Vnde in Eno flumine plurimi sunt submersi, nonnullis vltra fluuium Enum cum curribus & tentoriis remanentibus captiuatis aliisque wlneratis pariter & defunctis. Princeps vero Bohemie cum paucis incolumis euasit per fuge presidium, reliquis nonnullis militibus per diffugium dispersis hinc inde. Aliqui eciam confugientes ad quandam ciuitatem Salczburgensis episcopi nomine Mulndorff ibidem receperunt se ipsos, quos Henricus, dux Bauarie, & frater eius Ludouicus vallans obsidione non permisit eos exire, nisi per eorum liberationem inter principem Boemie & ipsum ducem Bavarie compositio fiat amicabilis, que facta est ; vnde liberati sine pactis ad propria redierunt.

A.D. 1258

Anno Domini M^oCCLVIII^o Nicolaus, Pragensis episcopus xxiii^s, obiit xvi kalendas Februarii, cui successit Johannes scolasticus & episcopus Pragensis xxiiii^s est factus. Eodem anno Przemisl, princeps Boemie, de mense Augusto dominos de Wyda, ac de Plawen & de Geraw sue dicioni potenter subiecit.

A.D. 1259

*Anno*² Domini MCCLIX Gerhardus, Moguntinus archiepiscopus, Erphordiam veniens ibidem moritur et apud fratres Minores tumulatur. Cui Wernherus, prepositus ecclesie, successit.²/

¹ MS. "recessisset.

² "Anno . . . successit." ² Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 250.

Anno Domini MCCLX^o Przemisl, princeps Boemie, filius olim regis Wenceslai, marchio Moraue, dux Austrie & Stirie predictus, cum exercitibus dictorum regnorum et provinciarum cum auxilio quoque amicorum suorum Bele, regi Vngarie, qui partem Stirie iam occupauerat et totam suo dominio subicere conabatur, et nato dicti regis Stephano cum gentibus diuersarum nacionum & linguarum hostiliter venientibus necnon volentibus totam Austriam, Morauiam & Boemiam devastare sine tremore circa flumen Morawam dictum occurrit in loco, vbi hic fluuius in Danubium influit, scilicet in campis amenissimis iiii idus Julii. Et princeps Boemie circa fluuium predictum Morawam se locauit. Similiter reges Vngarie parte steterunt ab alia. Et ita stantibus exercitibus vsque festum beati Johannis Baptiste, premissis tractatibus, demum sunt treuge statute. Hiis itaque treugis pendentibus, prefatus Przemisl per diuisas turmas suum exercitum segregauit. Sed cum postea circa opidum Lawa, alias Law, idem exercitus conuenisset de eius mandato, Stephanus, junior rex Vngarie, cum suis melioribus Vngaris & Cumanis per insidias eosdem fines ingressus oportunitate captata cupiebat turbare Boemie principis exercitum incollectum, et missis exploratoribus comperit Henricum, ducem Slesie, necnon Wladislaum Opoliensem vnacum Olomucensi episcopo in pratis circa Poherlicz iam castra fixisse. Quos cum incautos disponderet aggredi, contigit suum errare ductorem, quod non Poherlicz sed versus Lawam veniret. Jam enim marchio Brandenburgensis, Saxones, comites de Hardeck & multitudo magna illic aduenera[n]t. Erat quoque princeps Boemie cum suis iam vicinus, & rumor insonuit Vngaros & Cumanos propinquos adesse, partemque exercitus iam perturbare. Mouetur ex hoc exercitus Boemorum aduersus hostium cuneos se disponens. E contrario autem subito nunciatur hostes paucos fuisse iamque totaliter eos cæssisse per fugam. Fit ergo, quod hiis auditis ad sua quivis redit tentoria, comitibus de Hardek & de Plawen cum nobili Catholdo cognomento Orphano

Fol. 299

wlgariter Weysen pro custodia deputatis. Cumque sic tenerent custodiam, nonnullos hostium exploratores conspiciunt, quos insequentes ex latentibus insidiis, post tergum cernunt irrumpere hostium multitudinem valde magnam, qui illos nobiles circumdantes contra eos pugnam / instaurant, sed quoniam paucorum est pugna dissimilis inter multos, ideo pauci hostium inequali certamine superantur. Pervenienti hic rumor ad castra exercitus alios suscitavit ad pugnam. Nam armantur singuli pugnaturi, hostium insultus reprimere cupientes. Insurgunt ergo contra hostes hostiles, quos statim conuertunt in fugam, et multo plures hostium per fugam in flumine Morava sunt submersi & timore cateruatim prostrati amentes quam qui gladiis sunt occisi. Princeps autem Boëmie, gloriosa hac potitus victoria, diuisis inter suos multis spoliis tam in argento quam auro & rebus aliis Vngarorum, quadrigas suas magnis harum rerum onustavit thesauris. Tandem vero precibus regis & omnium nobilium Vngarie princeps Boëmie inclinatus, treugis pacis per annum statutis & iuramentis hinc inde firmatis, datis [quoque¹ per regem Vngarie obsidibus usque ad congruam satisfactionem in Boëmia detinendis cum glorioso triumpho sanus et incolumis ad propria reuertitur rex gloriosus. Nec lateat hoc legentem in dicto exercitu Przemisl] principes hos fuisse, puta Philippum, Salzpurgensem archiepiscopum, Johannem Pragensem, Brunonem Olomucensem episcopos, Vlricum, ducem Karinthie, Ottonem marchionem Brandenburgensem, quam plures Saxones, Henricum Slesie, Wladislaum Opoliensem duces et alios multos principes, comites, nobiles & barones. Predicti etiam belli progressum pape Adriano² per principem Boëmie predictum transmissa subscripta declarat epistola manifeste.

Sanctissimo in Christo patri ac domino Alexandro, Dei gracia sacrosancte Romane ecclesie summo pontifici,

¹ There is a gap here in the MS. The sentences within brackets are supplied from the Pulkava Chronicle. Precisely the same gap occurs in Clm. 476. ² So all MSS. including Brünn: it should be "*Alexandro*."

Ottakarus eadem gracia dominus regni Boemie, dux Austrie & Stirie & marchio Morauie. Quia pium pastorem suarum a lupis liberacio ouium delectat et benignum patrem iocundum reddit cum salute prosperitas filiorum, grauis belli, quod aduersus Belam et natum eiusdem Stephanum, Vngarie reges illustres, et Daniele regem Rassie, et filios eius, & ceteros Ruthenorum ac Tartaros, qui eidem in auxilium venerant, et Boleslaum Cracouiensem et Loczkonem iuuenem, Lantsacie duces, et innumeram multitudinem inhumanorum¹ hominum Comanorum, Vngarorum & diuersorum Sclauorum, Sicularum quoque & Walachorum, Bezzerminorum et Hismahelitarum, scismaticorum eciam, utpote Grecorum, Bulgarorum, Rassiensum & Bosnensium hereticorum, auctore Deo gessimus, & victorie nobis date celitus, / et post victoriam inter nos ex parte vna & dictos reges ex altera concordie² reformatæ processum non ab re duximus paternitati vestre preuia veritate presentibus declarandum. Sane cum ad flumen, quod Moraua dicitur, circa locum a castro & opido Hemburg duobus miliaribus distantem, Vngarie & Austrie in ibi confinia terminantem, cum nostris exercitibus venissemus, dictos reges & exercitus eorundem illis castra metatos in opposita parte ripe invenimus ex aduerso. Sicque factum est, ut nostra & aduersariorum castra solus dumtaxat diuideret fluuius memoratus. Cumque sic loci posicio se haberet, ut aduersarios sine irremediabili nostrorum iactura votiuum non possemus consequi accessum, & pro reformanda inter nos & eosdem reges pace fuisset vtrimque aliquocies multipliciter attemptatum, ipsis vero regibus de die in diem & de hora in horam suas in diuersas variantibus voluntates, non restaret aliquis pacis locus, haut dubium ad instar Pharaonis corda illorum indurante Domino vlcionum; nouissime vnus duorum parti aduerse obtulimus optionem, vt videlicet vel illa nobis cederet, quatenus ad

Fol. 300

¹ MS. adds here "*multitudinem*" superfluously.

² The word "*confirmate*" is added here superfluously by the MS. It is not in the standard text of Pulkava nor in Clm. 476.

eandem gerendi belli causa transire possemus, vel nos id parti aduerse concederemus. E quibus disiuncte partibus alteram pars aduersa elegit vt videlicet nos cederemus & nostra cessione eisdem locum transeundi daremus. Et ut id posse fieri videretur quouis impedimento cessante, dicti reges & eorum auxiliares & comites treugas constitutas & suis iuramentis firmatas per totum diem beate Margarethe festum proximo precedentem & medietatem ipsius festi diei nobis mediantibus ydoneis nunciis remiserunt. Verum idem sua pacta & iuramenta soliti violare, per vada inventa & sibi aptata clam nocte ad nostram partem cum omni suo exercitu transierunt. Et cum diceremus: pax & securitas! subito cum inenarrabili multitudine contra nos improvisos apparuerunt in campo. Et cum in spe treugarum vix decima pars nostri exercitus penes nos pro nostre persone custodia remansisset, eo quod plures de nostris transito Danubio opidum Hemburg intrauerant, alii vero cum curribus descenderant ad staciones & loca castrorum, hostes nostri fraude pleni in modum semicirculi per ordinatas acies nos cingentes, nisi Dominus adiuuisset, vivos nos forsitan deglutissent. Igitur in tam ineuitabili necessitatis articulo constituti, attendentes potestatem esse celestem, / & quoniam non multitudine exercitus sed de celo victoria datur munere magni Dei, totam in adiutorio Altissimi spem ponentes, nostros adiutores & comilitones primitus adhortati, in plurimos aduersariorum cuneos, data nobis de celo fiducia, irruimus confidenter. Quos Deus per manus nostras & nostrorum ymo suorum militum exterruit & prostrauit & in fugam conuertit, ita ut fugientibus cum impetu & se invicem comprimantibus dictus fluuius Moraua iuxta sui presagii nominis ethimologiam, tamquam mare rubrum Egipciis, multo cesorum sanguine rubricatus, factus sic in se submersis et intereuntibus mortis via. Siquidem in eodem fluuio fugientium a facie Dei peccatorum tanta periit multitudo, quod per cadauera hominum & equorum quasi per factos pontes nonnulli ex nostris aduersariorum

castra intrarent, et occupantes currus, tentoria & expensas queque preciosa spolia acceperunt. Quamuis igitur post triumphum diuinitus nobis fatum, quemadmodum communiter videbatur, regnum Vngarie nostre dicioni potuerimus subiugare, & idem in perpetuam premere seruitutem, aduertentes tamen, quod melius bonum vicinum habere concordem quam superare & exterminare rebellem, pensantes eciam, ut ait imperator Constantinus, "Crebro suauiores sunt amicicie post inimiciciarum causas ad concordiam restitute," cum principibus & proximis alti sanguinis nostri, dictis scilicet Vngarie regibus & domina regina & iuvene rege Bela, secundum oblatam nobis a magno comite Rulando de Posonio formam, maluimus pacis federa reformare, quam vastando & debilitando magnum Vngarie regnum ad idem et nostri terras domini Tartaris aditum aperire. Prenotate itaque compositionis forma[m] predictorum regum, regine & ducis Bele sigillis signatam vestro apostolatui transmittentes, suppliciter petimus eandem a sede apostolica confirmari, et ut opere precium est, apostolico in eum patrocinio communiri.

Fertur eciam quod ex exercitu[um] dictorum congressu visa fuerit aquila alba, habens caput aureum & collum, vexillum beati Wenceslai, quod tunc per burgrauium castri Pragensis in prelio gestabatur, sequi & vicissim crescere, quovsque extensis alis totum principis Boemie exercitum operiret. Nam & ipse burgrauius Jarossius nomine met retulit, idem vexillum / sancti Wenceslai Fol. 302
martyris in huiusmodi belli discrimine nullam passum fuisse penitus lesionem. Plura eciam sancti Wenceslai & aliorum patronorum Boemie Boemis exhibita patrocinia visa in bello huiusmodi referuntur. *Addicio*¹ *Verum eidem eciam principi Boemie prius, videlicet in festo sanctorum Johannis & Pauli, tristicie obtulerat se fortuna. Nam cum x vel plura milia hostium insultum facerent in Austriam circa castrum dictum Steolz, duo fratres sanguine nobilissimi,*

¹ "*Addicio . . . dicebantur*" (page 62, line 21). Extract from H.H.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 402).

iuuenes electi, Otto videlicet comes de Hordekke & Conradus comes de Plain ac cum ipsis Craſto de Sleuont, Chadoldus dictus Orphanus ſupradictus quaſi cum cccc^{tiſ} viris eis incaute occurrerunt. Quibus fere omnibus occiſis pauci euaserunt. In morte quoque predictorum comitum ipſo die deperiit ſucceſſio illius nobilis proſapie de Plain, quia ſine heredibus deceſſerunt. Przemisel itaque, obtenta tali victoria, progreſſus cum exercitu ſuo in Vngariam ab inde poſt paucos dies ſub forma ſuperius dicta [recedit et] rex Vngarie terras, que diſcordie cauſa fuerant, videlicet ducatum Stirie cum opido Bettouia, quod adhuc Vngari tenebant, plenarie reſtituit et in futurum mediante matrimonio confirmauit. Fueruntque in exercitu regum Vngarie diuerſarum nacionum orientalium & paganorum cc & xl milia equitum; in principis Boemorum exercitu c milia equitum, inter quos dicitur vii milia equorum ferro coopertorum. Stephanus quoque, rex Vngarie, grauiter fuit in eodem prelio vulneratus. In hoc bello ex collisione equorum & armorum tanta pulueris de terra ſurrexit habundancia, ut media & clara die vix homo hominem potuit cognoscere, & in flumine circa xiiii milia hominum ſubmersa dicebantur.

A.D. 1261

Anno Domini M^o CCLXI^o de mense Aprili concordia & pax eſt facta inter reges Vngarie & Przemisl, principem Boemie ſupradictum, vallata pena peccuniaria vndecim millium marcarum argenti.

Eodem ¹ anno dominus Alexander papa direxit litteras regibus & ducibus, archiepiſcopis et epiſcopis ac vniuerſis principibus Chriſtianis, hortando ipſos, ut contra horridam rabiem Tartarorum conſiliis & armis ſe premunire deberent. Nam idem Tartari, devictis & deletis omnibus regibus & regnis Sarracenorum in partibus tranſmarinis, Anthiochie & Akaron ac aliis Chriſtianorum provinciis terrorem tam validum incuſſerunt, ut ad dictos papam & reges ſupplices & frequentes legaciones dirigerent pro ſuccurſu. Vnde cum ſuper hoc negotio concilium in octaua apoſtolorum Petri & Pauli habendum in Witerbio

¹ The paſſage “*Eodem . . . extremum*” (page 63, line 2), is in the ſtandard text of Pulkava, but it is not in Clm. 476.

condixisset, ipse papa Alexander ^{iiii^{us}} viii kalendas Junii diem clausit extremum, & eodem¹ anno in festo decolacionis Johannis Baptiste dominus Jacobus nacione Gallicus, patriarcha Ierosolimitanus, assumptus ad papatum Vrbanus quartus¹ est dictus. /

Item eodem anno xv kalendas Novembris Margaretha Fol. 303
ducissa, conthoralis Przemisl, que sterilis fuit prolem non habens, per maritum suum est dimissa &, sicut supra dicitur, ab eo auctoritate apostolica separata, propter quod eodem anno princeps Boemie Przemisl predictus duxit vxorem Cunegundam, filiam Rostislai, ducis Bulgarorum, neptem Bele, regis Vngarie, & in castello Vngarie quod in wlgari Possen, alias Posonum, dicitur, cum ea nupcias celebrauit. Hanc venientem Pragam iii^o kalendas Januarii cum sollempni processione suscepit populus atque clerus. Ex hac eciam Cunegunde dictus Przemisl successiue duas filias generauit, item tres filios, quorum duobus in infancia mox defunctis, junior videlicet Wenceslaus postmodum in regno successit. Deinde dominus Wernherus, Maguntinensis archiepiscopus, Pragam venit, et viii^o kalendas Januarii in die Natiuitatis Domini, aurora lucente clausis in castro Pragensi principibus Almanie et baronibus, necnon Bohemie Carinthie & Polonie ducibus, ne fieret in die hominum multitudine magna compressio, serenissimum principem Przemyslonem, filium Wenceslai olim regis Boemie, heredem regni, ducem Austrie, Stirie & Morauie marchionem tunc existentem, regalibus indutum insigniis in ecclesia Pragensi vnxit in regem, imponens sibi regalem coronam, Cunegundem ipsius conjugem similiter coronando. Ex eo tempore vocatus est Otakarus et vtroque, sicut & prius scriptum est, nomine utebatur. Interfuerunt autem coronacioni huiusmodi Pragensis, Olomucensis, Pathauiensis & duo de Prussia episcopi, marchio Brandenburgensis, Otto suus sororius & duces Polonie, multique comites nobiles et

¹ “*Eodem . . . Vrbanus quartus,*” ¹ cf. Chron. xxiv Gen., A.F. iii, p. 328. Similar in wording to C.S.P.E.M., p. 251.

barones, quibus magnificum factum est festum in campo Lethne nominato per biduum. Tercio die dominus archiepiscopus & principes supradicti diuersis a rege muneribus honorati hilares ad propria redierunt.

FLAGELLATORES

Eodem quoque anno flagellatorum quedam secta suboritur, qui velantes capita more claustralium ad cingulum denudati flagellis in extremitatibus nodos habentibus fortissime se cedebant, quorum eciam quidam processiones, staciones, venias & genufluxiones fecerunt mirabiles secundum distinciones linguarum cantantes. Hii tales instituerunt errores, quod confessiones audierant, se mutuo absoluentes ab homicidiis & aliis criminibus, penitentes quoque sollempniter intronisauerunt, penitentiam publicam et occultam imponentes. Horum error si diucius perdurasset, clerus aut viluisset aut fuisset in totum deletus. Dicebant namque multi hanc sectam animabus proficere / propinquorum in inferno existencium & in celo & similiter suis post mortem. Hunc errorem primitus deprehendit Theodericus, episcopus Neumburgensis super Salam, et in parte magna extinxit. Nam multi nobiles & famosi adherebant secte huiusmodi, putantes erronee, purgacionem peccatorum se per eam habere, sed tandem igne et gladio hic error cessauit.

Frater¹ Thobias quondam prepositus ecclesie Pragensis, fundator monasterii fratrum Minorum in Benesaw, obiit hoc anno. Sepultus ibidem in choro.¹ Et Albertus² Magnus, episcopus Ratisponensis, fugiens curam animarum, domino Urbano pape offert voluntarie cessionem, cui successit dominus Leo, eiusdem ecclesie decanus.²

Fol. 304
A.D. 1262

Anno Domini MCCLXII^o perierunt fruges a grandine, siccitate necnon exercitu transeunte.

Eodem³ anno domina Elizabeth, filia regis Vngarie, soror

¹ "Frater . . . choro,"¹ cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 75). Boehmer regards it as one of the Beneschau fragments.

² "Albertus . . . decanus."² Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, 402).

³ "Eodem . . . Henricus" (page 65, line 2). Extract from H.A.A. P.SS. xvii, p. 402.

Stephani, vxor Henrici ducis Bauarie, peperit filium in vigilia sancti Mathie, qui dictus est Henricus. Ludouicus autem, frater Henrici ducis, ex domina Anna, filia ducis Conradi Polonie, genuit filiam Agnetem & Ludouicum Elegantem, qui postea Nurenberge in hastiludio vulneratus obiit & in Furstenfelt iuxta patrem in monasterio a patre fundato sepelitur.

Anno Domini MCCLXIII in Boemia propter predi- A.D. 1263
tas causas caristia fuit magna, multique homines ex hoc famis inopia sunt defuncti.

Dominus Helias, pater & amicus fratrum Minorum in Praga, obiit, qui totam aream domus sancti Jacobi pro remedio anime sue viuens donauit, et sepultus est in ecclesia ante altare sancti Anthonii, quod fuit in latere ecclesie antique. Vrbanus papa Sicilie regnum, quod a Manfredo occupabatur, Karolo, Ludouici regis Francorum fratri, concessit, eumque in Italiam per legatos euocauit.

Anno¹ Domini MCCLXIII^o in mense Julio apparuit A.D. 1264
cometes stella, que a se mire altitudinis & longitudinis radios emittebat, & eadem nocte, qua Vrbanus papa obiit, extincta est, videlicet in mense Octobri.¹

Eodem anno in autumpno Przemisl rex Boemie filiam sororis sue, marchionisse Brandenburgensis, Bele juniore filio regis Vngarie ad concordiam inter eos conceptam amplius roborandam tradidit in vxorem, & nupciis sollempniter celebratis, Boemiam cum gaudio remeauit.

Anno Domini MCCLXV rex Przemysl ex vxore sua A.D. 1265
filiam generauit, que nata eodem tempore cum magna solempnitatis leticia baptisatur in festo Purificacionis Virginis gloriose.

Item anno eodem magna orta est inter regem Boemie & ducem Bauarie dissensionis materia, propter quod Boemi & Morauii mandato regis in adventu Domini Bauariam spoliis & incendiis vastauerunt. Et eodem anno Egram ciuitatem cum suis pertinenciis duci Bauarie & sororio suo, filio Conradi, filii Friderici quondam impera-

¹ "Anno . . . Octobri." ¹ N.G. is apparently quoting partly from A.R.C.G., p. 535, and partly from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, pp. 402, 403).

toris, hostiliter abstulerunt & eam cum suis incolis possidendam regi Boemie tradiderunt. *Item*¹ Otto, Patauiensis episcopus, *iiii idus Aprilis obiit*. In cuius locum primo postulatus est dominus Wladislaus, postea Salczburgensis electus, sed dominus Petrus a domino papa Clemente substituitur, & sic bene ac mirabili modo utrique ecclesie, videlicet Salczpurgensi & Patauiensi, a sede apostolica est provisum.¹ |

Fol. 305

*Eodem anno inclitus rex Otakarus Bo[e]mie, necnon dux Austrie & Stirie ac marchio Moraue, venerabili domino Conrado, episcopo Frisingensi, confirmavit iudicium provinciale, quod ab antiquo ecclesia Frisingensis habebat in Heybs per sequentes litteras.*²

In nomine Domini. Amen. Nos Ottakarus, Dei gracia rex Boemie, dux Austrie et Stirie et marchio Moraue, uniuersis presencium noticiam habituris, salutem in perpetuum. Ad memoriam rei perpetuam gesta regalia calumpniorum scrupulis extemptis quibuslibet inuolabiliter ut seruentur, et ne a memoria hominum labili decidant decursum temporis obliuiosum eadem scripturarum vocabulis duximus mancipanda. Hinc est quod uniuersos et singulos tam presentes quam posteros scire volumus, quod reuerendum in Christo patrem & dominum Conradum, venerabilem episcopum Frisingensem, amicum nostrum carissimum se nostris beneplacitis & desideriis promptum & paratum in omnibus exhibentem, specialis prerogatiua dilectionis & fauoris pocioris gracia prosequentes, ipsum dominum episcopum omnibus iuribus provinciali iudicio in Heybs attinentibus, quibus predecessor suus felicitis memorie gauisus esse dinoscitur, libere ac plenarie volumus congaudere ipsius iudicii provincialis homines ad iurisdiccione[m] et dominium iam tacti episcopi domini pertinentes ab exactionibus quibuslibet et vexacionibus in debitis et tractionibus ad fora aliena, videlicet iudicum nostrorum | provincialium seu iudicum ciuitatum vel aliorum quorumcumque iudicum et sub iudicum penis eximentes. Ita

Fol. 306

¹ "Item . . . provisum."¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 403).

² E.R.B. ii, p. 185. Zahn. Cod. dipl. Austr. Frising. Font rer. Aust., xxxi, 254.

tamen quod in signum exempcionis huiusmodi et iudicum tria talenta denariorum Wiennii singulis annis ad nostram cameram vel alicui alteri persone cui ipsam summam deputandam duxerimus faciat assignari, quemadmodum predecessor suus pretactus eandem summam annuam comiti Ottoni de Hardecke pie memorie dinoscitur exsoluisse, qui comes Otto ipsum iudicium prouinciale vnacum comicia in Peilstein a nobis possedissee dinoscitur tytulo feodali. In cuius rei testimonium & robur firmitatis perpetuum, vt premissa libertas & exempcio nostra et de regia liberalitate concessa inconvulsa permaneat, et ne aliquam nostre sub obtentu gracie aliquatenus infringatur, presentes nostrorum sigillorum munimine fecimus comuniri. Actum Wiene anno Domini M^oCCLXV, viii indiccione, presentibus testibus Zmilone de Belkowe, Henkone marschalco Boemie, Wilhelmo de Phrinsperge, Disnata, dapifero Morauie, Hartlibo camerario, Zmelone de Brumawe, Henrico dapifero de Greizenstain, Marquardo magistro cellarii, Menhardo de Srovocense, Vlrico de Luhsnik, Fredrico de Luhn timer, Ditrigo de Richendorff, Volfigo de Aigen, Marquardo Leuhsnekke, Conrado Sapponie & aliis quam pluribus fide dignis. Datum ibidem pridie nonas Aprilis per manus prothonotariorum nostrorum magistrorum Vlrici & Petri, regni nostri anno quarto.

Anno¹ Domini MCCLXVI^o, iii nonas Marcii facta est congressio in Apulia inter Karolum, fratrem regis Francie & Manfredum, regem Sicilie, & Manfredus spurius victus occubuit non longe a Beneuento a copiis Karoli.¹ Bellum quoque magnum factum est in pago Wirczburgensi vi idus Augusti inter Hermannum comitem² de Henneburcke & ciues Wirczburgenses, vbi ciues victores cum fautoribus extiterunt.¹ Hoc anno Przemisl, gloriosus rex Boemie, de eodem mense Augusti vsque Ratisponam ex altera parte Danubii per quosdam milites Australes Bauariam vastauit

A.D. 1266

Fol. 307

¹ “Anno . . . Karoli,”¹ cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 79). “Anno . . . extiterunt”¹ is based on H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 405).

² MS. here repeats “comitem” superfluously.

hostiliter incendiis & rapinis, et in quibusdam [ciuitatibus]¹ & castris fugitios homines utriusque sexus iussit igne cremari, reuersus Boemiam cum salute, Bauaria ex utraque parte Danubii fere tota destructa. *Addicio. quia*² *idem rex Boemie inimicicias iamdudum contra Ludouicum & Henricum, duces Bauarie, conceptas totis viribus in arma conuerterat, [adsciscens]³ sibi Salzpurgensem, Patauiensem, Ratisponensem ciuitat[es]⁴ cum municionibus earundem. Ex quibus tunc facta sunt in Bawaria multa mala. Ipse quoque rex cum multis milibus armatorum versus Chamb Bauariam intrauit, destruens Regenstauff & Nitaw & alia castra, in quibus per incendium & iacula sagittarum magna periit hominum multitudo, & morante ipso per biduum Ratispone, per Egram reuertitur in Boemiam, exercitu penuriam victualium paciente. Recedente autem ipso rege Boemie de Bauaria, Henricus, dux Bauarie, gener regis Vngarie Bele, misso exercitu ultra flumen Iltsam opidum in Welden et alias municiones cum tota provincia ibidem incendio devastauit. Subsequenter iii kalendas Nouembris idem Henricus, dux Bawarie, per quandam portam ciuitatem Patauiensem procuracione siue tradicionem quorundam per adulterinas clauas obtentam, nouum forum cum quibusdam domibus & etiam cellario canonicorum ac magna parte ciuitatis exussit, aliquibus ibidem ciuib[us] interfectis, totamque ciuitatem cepisse se sperasset, si sui non fuissent propter cupiditatem rapine & noctis tenebras hinc inde dispersi. Et sic mane omnes, confluente populo ad arma, confusibiliter sunt expulsi.² Eodem⁵ quoque anno obiit N comes de Wirttenberg, antiquus cognomine mit dem Dumen, quia habuit in manu dextra pollicem magnum.⁵*

De obitu Vlrici ducis.

A.D. 1267

Anno Domini MCCLXVII Vlricus, inclitus dux Carinthie, carens liberis, Ottakarum, predictum regem Boemie, Austrie & Stirie ducem necnon Morauie march-

¹ Supplied from Clm. 476, which has this word.

² "Quia . . . expulsi." ² Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 405).

³ MS. assistentes.

⁴ MS. ciuitatibus.

⁵ "Eodem . . . magnum." ⁵ Extract from Hermannus Gigas (ed. Meuschen) 1760.

ionem, dominum Carniole et Egre / provincie, serenissimi Fol. 308
 Wenceslai auunculi sui filium, ducatus Carinthie heredem
 constituit, dum adhuc in humanis esset. *Eodem*¹ anno
 dominus Gwido, cardinalis & apostolice sedis legatus, vi idus
 Maii apud Wiennam synodum celebrauit, cui interfuerunt
 Johannes Pragensis, Petrus Patauensis, Bruno Brixiensis,
 Chunradus Frisingensis, Leo Ratisponensis, Amilricus
 Lauend[in]ensis episcopi & alii quam plurimi de ipsis
 diocesibus prelati, archidiaconi & decani. Tuncque in
 precedenti dominica factus est terre motus, ita ut in multis
 locis edificia ruinam paterentur. Et dominica Trinitatis
 sequente dominus Wladislaus apud Salczpurg in archie-
 piscopum consecratur. Ottakarus, rex Boemie, & Henricus,
 dux Bawarie, rursus per pacis osculum ad concordiam
 redierunt. Et Elizabeth, ducissa Bauarie, coniunx Henrici,
 v idus Junii peperit filiam, que baptisatur a Leone Ratis-
 ponensi episcopo & Katherina vocatur. Similiter eodem anno
 idibus Septembris natus est Ludouico duci, fratris [sic]
 Henrici, filius, qui & Ludouicus est nuncupatus.¹ Bondogodar
 soldanus, Armeniam hostili exercitu ingressus, Christianos
 persequitur & Antiochiam cepit & eam pene deleuit. *Eodem*²
 quoque anno est canonizata sancta Hedwigis, ducissa Polonie,
 in Trebnicz, idibus Octobris per Clementem quartum, ponti-
 ficatus eius anno tercio, fuitque sancta Hedwigis soror Gert-
 rudis, regine Vngarie, matris sancte Elizabeth lantgraue.²
 Hoc quoque anno grauis³ pugna fuit apud Hayerloch in festo
 Omnium Sanctorum inter comites de Zolr &⁴ de Hohen-
 burg, ubi comes de Zolr potenter triumphauit.³ Et
 Conradinus, filius Conradi regis, invitatur ad Italiam per
 Siculos & Apulos, quod sequenti anno implet ingressu.

Anno Domini MCCLXVIII^o precepit rex Boemie A.D. 1268
 Otakarus renouari pondera & mensuras, et ut cuilibet

¹ “*Eodem . . . nuncupatus.*”¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 406).

² “*Eodem . . . lantgraue.*”² Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 80). Both passages are based on C.M.M.E., 675.

³ “*Grauis . . . triumphauit,*”³ apparently a quotation from Hermannus Gigas, ed. Meuschen. ⁴ MS. repeats *comites*.

fieret iusticia, signo suo signari. *Conradinus*,¹ rex *supradictus*, *Conradi filius* & *Friderici quondam imperatoris nepos*, iam *priori anno invitatus a Lombardis & Apulis Italiam ingressus*, *adherentibus & fauentibus sibi plurimis ciuitatibus*, *Romam ingreditur*, *ubi gloriose tamquam imperator cum magno tripudio suscipitur*, *domino papa tunc apud Viterbium existente & predicente de ipso*, *quod tamquam ad victimam iret*. Post hec *Apuliam progreditur cum exercitu*, *et habito conflictu cum Karolo rege victus & captus & apud Neapolim iussu predicti Karoli securi decollatur* *iiii kalendas Nouembris*. Cum eo etiam *Fridericus dux*, *filius Hermanni quondam marchionis de Paden dux Austrie*, *decollatur*, *de quo spes non modica fuerat*, *quod deberet aliquando paternos ducatus obtinere*. Deinceps *Karolus rex tamquam duobus regibus*, *Manfredo scilicet*, *filio Frederici imperatoris*, & *Conradino fratruele ipsius*, *convictis et occisis*, *regno Sicilie libere potitur defensionis ecclesie habens laudem.*

Fol. 309

Subsequenter eodem mense in die sancti Crisogoni obiit Clemens papa, *qui in papatu nunquam Romam intrauerat*; *in loco*, *ubi diu steterat*, *videlicet in Viterbio*, *sepelitur*. Et ex tunc *sedes vacare cepit quasi biennio propter discordiam cardinalium*, *qui permittente Domino ad malum tocius Christianitatis in eligendo pastorem ecclesie katholice non poterant concordare.*¹

A.D. 1269

Anno Domini MCCLXIX nata est regi Otakaro filia nonis Septembris. *Gregorius*,² *patriarcha Aquilegiensis*, *obiit*, *in cuius locum eligitur Philippus*, *quondam Salczburgensis electus*, *frater Vlrici ducis Carinthie*, *quo Vlrico post hec in breui defuncto memoratus Philippus sibi eundem ducatum tamquam verus heres ipsius attrahere attemptabat*, *sed per Otakari regis potenciam impeditur*. Item *Henrico*, *duci Bawarie*, *in die sancti Dyonisii nascitur filius*, *qui vocatus est Ludouicus*.

¹ "Conradinus . . . concordare,"¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 406). Cf. also C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 81) for passage to "Nouembris" and for passage "Subsequenter" to "concordare." But the day of S. Crisogonus is November 24th, whereas Pope Clement died on November 29th.

² "Gregorius . . . audiuit" (page 71, line 2), cf. H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 406).

Item in ipso festo Natiuitatis Domini tanta fuit inuondacio aquarum, quantam nullus viuens audiuit.

Anno Domini MCCLXX^o rex Otakarus in diuersis A.D. 1270
locis sui regni multas domos fecit construi & castella de nouo. In¹ ipsa estate tanta siccitas fuit ubique, ut sata omnino arescerent, & ex hoc fames maxima est secuta, attamen vinum in habundacia fuit. Item Wladislaus, archiepiscopus Salczburgensis, obiit, cui subrogatur Fridericus, eiusdem ecclesie prepositus. Bela² eciam, rex Vngarie, frater sancte Elizabeth & pater Elizabeth, ducisse Bauarie, v nonas Maii in festo Inuencionis sancte crucis in insula Budensi obiit, cuius corpus Strigonii in ecclesia fratrum Minorum constructa in honore Virginis gloriose, quam ipse rex Bela adhuc viuens sumptuoso opere & pulchro fecerat inchoari, sepelitur, relinquens Stephanum quintum filium suum successorem.¹ Maria eciam regina, uxor Bele regis & mater Stephani, non post longum tempus ex hac vita decessit, que fuit filia imperatoris Grecorum. Ibidem cum duce Bela, filio suo carissimo, feliciter requiescit, qui fuit vir plenus virtutibus, cuius memoria quasi mel dulcorosum usque in hodiernum diem in ore Vngarorum suauescit. Cuius corpus Philippus, archiepiscopus Strigoniensis, de ecclesia memorata auferri & exhumari fecerat contra iura, & in sua ecclesia cathedrali indebite tumulari. Super quo facto coram summo pontifice causa diucius ventilata fratres Minores maximo rehabere ex integro meruerunt & coram beate Virginis altare gloriosius condiderunt, ubi tales versus continentur.

*Aspice rem caram, tres cingunt Virginis aram,
Rex, dux, regina quibus assint gaudia trina.
Dum licuit, tua, dux, vixit, rex Bela, potestas,
Fraus latuit, pax firma fuit, regnavit honestas.²*

Item Ludouicus,³ rex Francorum, Christianitatis gracia magna comparata classe, ultra mare iterato cum duobus filiis

¹ "In . . . successorem." ¹ Ibid., p. 406.

² "Bela . . . honestas," ² cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 82). Extract from C.H., p. 202.

³ "Ludouicus . . . defunctus est" (page 73, line 3). Extract from A.R.C.G., pp. 535-7.

Fol. 310

adiuncto sibi rege Nauarre & quam plurimis ecclesiarum prelatiſ & baronibus, iter pro recuperacione Terre Sancte aſſumpsit. Verum ad hoc, ut facilius Terra Sancta recuperaretur, ipsis in conſilium initis, ut regnum Thurcorum, quod in medio conſiſtens non parum dabat transfretandi impedimentum, primitus ſubiecerunt [sic] potestati Chriſtianorum. Et cum portum apud Carthaginem cepiſſent potenti manu, infirmitas, que illo anno maxime circa conſinia maris vigit, in eodem Chriſtianorum exercitu nimis invaluit. Et primo quidem Johannem, regis Francie filium, & poſtea legatum pape & dominum Albanenſem cardinalem & demum ipſum regem Ludouicum Chriſtianiſſimum cum multis regni ſui proceribus, comitibus & baronibus, necnon aliis ſimplicibus de medio ſuſtulit. Quam feliciter autem predictus rex terminauerit, rex Navarre per litteras domino Tuſculano intimauit. Nam in infirmitate ſua laudare nomen Domini non ceſſabat, illam oracionem quandoque interſerebat: Fac nos, Domine, proſpera mundi deſpicere & nulla eius aduerſa formidare! Orabat & pro populo, quem ſecum adduxerat, dicens, Eſto, Domine, plebi tue ſanctificator & cuſtos. Et cum appropinquaret ad finem, reſpexit in celum, dicens: Introibo in domum tuam, adorabo ad templum ſanctum tuum, Domine! Et hoc dicto obdormiuit in Domino. Et cum de morte pii regis turbaretur exercitus Chriſtianorum & Sarracenorum letaretur, dominus Karolus, rex Sicilie, frater regis, bellator egregius, pro quo viuens adhuc frater ſuus, rex Francie, miſerat, nauigio cum magna milicia aduenit. De cuius adventu Chriſtianis gaudium, Sarraceniſque meſticia creuit. Eandem provinciam ſuſcipiens legionem in Affricam deportauit, & Sarraceni timore compulſi pacta cum Chriſtianis inierunt, ut omnes Chriſtiani in regno illo libere dimitterentur, & ſolutis expenſis regalibus, quas ſibi fecerant, rex Thurcorum regis Sicilie tributarius eſt effectus. Et cum ex aduentu domini Edwardi, regis Anglie, & multitudine Friſonum exercitus multiplicatus eſſet, abſque vtilitate eſt hinc inde diſperſus, quia Terra Sancta, ad quam tendebant, gubernatore peregrinorum carebat, quia patriarcha, qui legatus erat, in Terra Sancta deſunctus eſt, & ſedes apoſtolica, que

utrobique providere debebat, tunc vacabat. Tunc Rex Navarre infirmus de Affrica processerat & in Siciliam veniens, iuxta Treponiam in domo ordinis fratrum Carmeli defunctus est. Ludouico¹ autem, Francorum regi, succedit Philippus, filius eius, regnans annis xv. Et Bele, regi Vngarie, Stephanus, filius eius rex, qui circa festum sancti Thome apostoli misso exercitu in Austriam, a parte meridiana Danubii illam provinciam devastavit, occisis & in captiuitatem abductis xvii milibus hominum.¹

Anno Domini MCCLXXI^o Otakarus qui & Przemisl, A.D. 1271
 illustris rex Boemie, dux Austrie, Stirie, Carinthie & Carniole, Morauie marchio & dominus Egre & portus Nawonis, cum suis exercitibus idibus Aprilis intrauit Vngariam, nemine resistente, & *infra octauam Pasche invasit eam*. Sane castrum nobilissimum, Possen nomine, alias Presburg, vel Possonium, regis Vngarie obsedit & tandem vi exercitus sui expugnauit, despolians cameram regiam in eodem castro plenam thesauris auri pariter & argenti & baltkinis² miri operis preciosis, necnon in curribus Pragam deduxit. Postea castrum fecit funditus demoliri, captiuis militibus deputatis pro defensionis munimine transmissis ad castra sua in Austria & Morauia firmiora. Deinde procedens vlterius ad castra & ciuitates alias, *videlicet Albemburg & Tirna & Castro sancti Georgii ac alias plurimas municiones*, expugnauit easdem, in illis nimia capta preda. Quedam vero castra & ciuitates forciores pro se retinuit, que cum suis attinenciis sibi soluerunt annuam pensionem, / infirmioribus castris & Fol. 311
 ciuitatibus funditus desertatis. Tandem venit ad magnum flumen, cui nomen Rab, super quod Stephanus, rex Vngarie, pontem fecerat ligneum, quem cum de exercitu Stephani multi transissent causa bellandi, subito quidam ex eis a Boemisulnerati letaliter ceciderunt, ceteris fugientibus in flumine prefato submersis, xii kalendas Iulii.

¹ “*Ludouico . . . hominum.*”¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 406).

² So MS. Probably corruption for “*baldachinis.*” Clm. 476 also reads “*baltkinis.*”

Quorum casum cernens Stephanus statim pontem destruxit, fuge presidio se comittens, ceteris constitutis in alia parte fluminis exitum rei cernentibus. Tunc rex cum Boemis habito consilio, cum dubitaret quid amplius faceret *devictis*¹ *cunctis circa festum Penthecosten propter penuriam*² *victualium in ciuitatem suam reuertitur cum triumpho, & demum relaxato exercitu reuertitur in Boemiam. Stephanus autem, rex Vngarie, post recessum regis Boemie, missis in Morauiam Vngaris & Cumanis, per incendia et rapinas & multas strages hominum plurima mala gessit. Tandem circa solsticium estiuale per episcopos & religiosos viros Deum timentes ad inopinatam & subitam pacis concordiam redierunt.*¹

Eodem anno de mense Augusto missus est Coloniensis archiepiscopus, cum nonnullis principibus, electoribus imperii & nobilibus de Almania, Boemiam ad regem Otakarum, rogantes precibus, vt qui in Romanorum regem concorditer est electus, velit cesaream sibi assumere dignitatem. Quos rex gratanter suscipiens & tractans honeste, consilio vsus nobilis de Rziczano Andree nomine, camerarii regni Boemie, necnon aliorum nobilium plurimorum, qui zelo doloso concepto, scilicet ut non fiat potencior, dissuaserunt suscipere tante sollicitudinis principatum, tandem eos remisit vacuos & laboribus suis inanes. Nuncii vero a rege post hoc nobilibus muneribus honorati ad electores principes alios sunt reuersi. Creditur, quod ob hoc, quod malo suorum vsus consilio rex tantam respuit dignitatem, postea ductus penitencia super eo habens sepe remorsum in corde de seculo cicuius migravit.

Eodem anno inclita Cunegundis, regina Boemie, v kalendas Octobris peperit filium, cui nomen imposuit Wenceslaus, & ipse postea patri in regno successit.

Eodem quoque anno Otakarum idem rex, validum congregans exercitum, intrat Bauariam, predis & incendiis

¹ “*Devictis . . . redierunt.*”¹ Extract from H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 406).

² M.S. “*penuariam.*”

in magna parte devastans, vnde in quodam castro per ignis incendium multi homines perierunt.

*In*¹ autumpno autem viii kalendas Nouembris domina Elizabeth, soror Stephani regis Vngarie, ducissa Bauarie, coniunx Henrici ducis, diem clausit extremum, que, cum esset femina virtuosa & omni bonitate preclara, morte sua toti provincie inconsolabilem luctum fecit. Filia quoque eius similiter nomine Elizabeth, cum esset in etate tredecim annorum, precedenti anno in monasterio in Lanczhut Selgental habitum religionis assumpsit iuxta ordinem Cisterciensem viuendi.¹

Anno Domini MCCLXXII^o dominus² Theobaldus, archidiaconus Leodiensis, iam priori estate per formam compromissi in summum pontificem electus, cum glorioso apparatu in Quadragesima intra[t]urbem, & ibi in ecclesia sancti Petri | consecratus, Gregorius decimus est appellatus. Qui post elec-
Fol. 312
cionem suam e Siria euocatus reuertitur a Terra Sancta, & Viterbii est inuinctus.²

Eodem anno Stephanus,³ rex Vngarie, circa kalendas Augusti moritur, cum tantum duobus annis regnasset, & in annò tercio regni sui in magna insula obiit, & sepultus est in ecclesia beate Virginis insula Budensi in loco Beginarum, & reliquit duos filios successores & vnā filiam nomine Mariam, quam Karolus Claudus, rex Sicilie, duxit uxorem. Primogenitus vero filius Ladislaus nomine statim eo anno, quo pater mortuus est, ab Vngaris coronatur. In sequenti autumpno tanta inuondacio pluue erupit, ut paruuli riui in tam magna flumina excrescerent, ut euulsis domibus multis in submersione peccorum, abductione feni & annone, homines circa valles residentes dampna plurima paterentur. Eodem anno Bela dux de Matshawe supradictus, affinis regis Boemie, ab Henrico, comite de Guzing, occiditur.

¹ “*In . . . viuendi.*”¹ H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 406).

² “*Dominus . . . inuinctus.*”² Based in substance, but not verbally, either on C.M.M.E. 684, or on C.S.P.E.M. 261, 262; N.G. uses the same material, but in different words, in C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 83, 84).

³ “*Stephanus . . . consumpta*” (page 76, line 6). Based partly on H.A.A. (P.SS. xvii, p. 407), (the main Chronicle of Hermann of Althaus stops at this point “*consumpta*”), partly on C.H., especially “*moritur . . . Beginarum.*”

A.D. 1273

Anno Domini MCCLXXIII Vngari & Cumani cum Oldamir, duce eorum, iterum vastant post festum Purificationis quasdam partes Austrie, Stirie, & Morauie. Eodem anno feria v post dominicam, qua cantatur "Misericordia Domini," kathedralis ecclesia Ratispone cum palacio episcopali & optimis campanis incendio totaliter est consumpta. Otakarus vero, qui & Przemisel, rex Boemie, in festo sancti Bartholomei apostoli cum suis exercitibus procedens ad partes Vngarie, Morauie, Austrie & Stirie adiacentes, que nimis impugnabantur ab Vngaris & paganis, & sibi castris & ciuitatibus illarum parcium subiugatis & militum custodia communitis, superatis hostibus reuertitur ad propria gloriosus.

Eodem anno vi kalendas Septembris Rudolphus,¹ comes de Habsburg, in partibus Basilee est in regem Romanorum electus. Qui fuit quondam magister curie in palacio regis Ottakari, regis Boemie, vir strenuus & iustus. Qui Ludouico, duci Bauarie, iam viduato filiam suam Mechtildam tradidit in uxorem; de qua idem Ludouicus genuit Rudolphum, Palatinum Reni & Ludouicum iuniorem postea imperatorem, dictum Bauarum. Hoc anno inuondacio aquarum maxima fuit per totam Boemiam, ita quod magna pars ciuitatis Pragensis in aqua fuit & omnia altaria in aqua steterunt in ecclesia sancti Francisci; sororibus eciam eiusdem loci in nauiculis victualia portabantur.

De Concilio Lugdunensi.

A.D. 1274

Anno² Domini millesimo CCLXXIIII Gregorius papa decimus indictum concilium generale cepit celebrare Lugduni kalendis Maii in festo Philippi & Jacobi,² quod ante biennium indixerat, conuocatis terrarum pontificibus vniuersis katholicam fidem habentibus. Quod eciam durauit per vii septimanas, et eidem interfuit Johannes, Pragensis episcopus, qui reuersus ad propria, prout man-

¹ This account of Rudolph bears some similarity to Schedel's account in the Nuremberg Chronicle under A.D. 1273. Cf. also A.F. ii, p. 84, which passage is based on C.S.P.E.M., p. 263.

² "Anno . . . Jacobi." ² Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 264; cf. also C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 85).

datum fuit apostolicum, precepit, locari truncos concauos/
per ecclesias vniuersas ad colligendas elemosinas et Fol. 313
oblaciones fidelium pro subsidio Terre Sancte.

Preterea in eodem concilio electionem confirmauit Rudolphi, Romanorum regis, necnon decimas, que fuerunt exacte per Almaniam, Rudolpho electo, in Terre Sancte subsidium assignauit,¹ *sed ipse minime post mortem pape ad proficiscendum operam dedit. In eodem concilio idem papa Strigoniensem in Vngaria electum archiepiscopum sibi presentatum, nequaquam voluit confirmare nec consecrare in archiepiscopum, nisi corpus Bele, regis Vngarie, fratribus Minoribus violenter ablatum restitueret & satisfaceret eisdem. Nam predecessor huius electi Belam, regem Vngarie, in Strigonio, vbi ipse rex elegerat sepulturam, violenter extumulauit sepultum iam tunc viii diebus in ecclesia fratrum Minorum & abstulit, propter quod iste restituere coactus fuit. Greci quoque fuerunt in hoc concilio.*

Anno Domini M^o CCLXXV Soldanus² Babilonie in odium A.D. 1275
Christianorum Armeniam vastauit & populum regni illius in ore gladii occidit, cum essent treuge inter ipsos & ipsum, quas idem soldanus impie contra phas crudeliter violauit, nec Armenis fidem tenuit, quam promisit.² Eodem anno Rudolphus rex, in congregatione principum apud Herbiopolim comitem Fridericum de Zolorn, filium sororis sue, principem creauit & eidem burgrauiatum Nurnbergensem tunc vacantem concessit et postea ad Otakarum, regem Boemie, misit.

Anno Domini M^o CCLXXVI^o de mense Septembri A.D. 1276
misit rex Romanorum Rudolphus nuncios ad / Otakarum, Fol. 314
regem Boemie, petens sibi terras restitui, Stiriam, Austriam, Carinthiam, portum Naonis et Forum Iulii, asserens eas ad imperium pertinere. Rex autem Otakarus, vir magni cordis, tale fertur dedisse responsum. “ Rudolphus terras, quas petit, nunquam possedit nec possidebit in antea, quoniam earum aliquae sunt donate michi ratione dotis matrimonii cum Margaretha, filia Leupoldi

¹ It is noteworthy that this word “*assignauit*” which is necessary and which forms part of the standard text of Pulkava, is omitted in Clm. 476.

² “*Soldanus . . . promisit.*”² Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 273.

Fol. 315

ducis Austrie quondam, contracti, sed & alias quasdam pugna gladii acquisiui." Videns itaque Rudolphus rex se verbis non proficere, furore succensus, preparat se ad bella. Quo comperto, rex Boemie misit exercitus in occursum versus Teplam ad prohibendum eius introitum. Rex quidem ipse morabatur in venacionibus, dans operam voluptati. Rex autem Rudolphus audiens hoc mutauit propositum & ex alia parte Danubii versus Austriam dirigit gressus suos, & ibidem ciuitates, villas, opida occupare cepit pariter et castella, et transiens per Patauiam usque Lynczam ibidem est castra metatus. Quo audito rex Otakarus suis mandauit, qui erant circa Teplam, ut quantocius veniant vsque in Drosdorff. Transeuntibus itaque illis de Tepla per Pilsnensem & Bechinensem provincias et per siluas errantes, in inuio et non in via sunt multa perpassi, quovsque venerant ad locum / Drosdorff conductum. Et occupantes fines provinciarum, que fuerunt in confinio ad latitudinem & longitudinem quatuor miliarium, castra fixerunt, inter eos Otakaro iam manente. Sed & Rudolphus rex ex alia parte Danubii cum suis exercitibus fecerat staciones circa Lincz. Cumque sub hoc modo septem ebdomadis morarentur, videntes principes supradicti homines deficere victualium inopia & defectu equorum [&] pabuli, per nuncios hincinde missos treugis tractatibus & securitate data, prestitis iuramentis eligentes locum, insulam videlicet Cambeck dictam, ad tractandum compositionem amicabilem conuenerunt. Premissis quoque tractatibus confederati sunt per contractum sponsalium inter Wenceslaum, filium regis, & filiam Rudolphi electi, et e conuerso inter filium Rudolphi & filiam Ottakari celebrandi. Hii contractus iuramentis intervenientibus & litteris roborantur in presencia episcoporum & nobilium multorum. Videns igitur rex Otakarus se taliter confederatum Rudolpho ad eius instanciam, inductus quorundam consilio spe vberioris gracie, obtulit sibi quinque vexilla in subiectionis signum, sperans eadem sibi restitui cum terris & dominiis, que tunc temporis resignauit eidem. Rudolphus

vero, cum suis nobilibus, habens consilium, Otakaro regi duo duntaxat vexilla restituit, de terris Boemie & Morauie ipsum investiens, ceteris omnibus sibi reseruatis, pretendens eciam se dictarum terrarum indigenciam habere, sed postquam vberioris fortune prosperitatem haberet bonorum opulentiis, / dictos sibi Fol. 316 restitueret principatus. Hiis peractis taliter pacis vinculo ambo principes colligati ad propria redierunt. *Acta*¹ sunt hec in crastino beate Catherine virginis: ibi cum rege Rudolpho fuerunt duo archiepiscopi, videlicet Conradus Moguntinus & Salczburgensis, episcopus Herbipolensis & alii viii episcopi & palatinus Reni & dux Bauarie & lantgravius Hassie & comites de Tyrol & alii comites & nobiles circa ducentos [sic]. In reconciliacione istorum regum arbitri fuerunt Herbipolensis episcopus, Olomucensis episcopus, palatinus Reni & marchio Brandenburgensis. Rex autem Rudolphus duobus pueris suis, quos desponsauit pueris regis Boemie, promisit xl milia marcarum & iterum xl milia marcarum.¹ Regina² autem Boemie, talia federa intelligens, egre ferens, dicens quod nullius valoris esset, quod se comiti simplici tam leuiter subiugasset. Vnde rex nimis turbatus sollicitatur et quid agere debeat, ignorat, sed prependens, quod nobiles³ in Austria ab ipso defecerant & Rudolpho adherebant, & quod sic circumventus fuit, doluit et proponens in corde, quod aut cum honore viueret aut potius mori optaret, quam sic in tali discrimine esset.²

Eodem anno Witkonides cum magna milicia receserunt a rege, multa mala per regnum Boemie pauperibus & claustralibus inferentes, quod dissimulavit rex eo quod tunc temporis eorum auxiliis indigebat.

Anno Domini M° CCLXXVII Rudolphus, rex Romanorum, postquam preterito anno terras Austrie | et Stirie ab Ottakaro, rege Boemie, sibi eas usurpando, ut premissum est, reseruando, ipse iam in Austria existens in Wienna iura, que A.D. 1277
Fol. 317

¹ “*Acta . . . marcarum.*”¹ Extract from C.S.P.E.M., pp. 278, 279, including the mistake “*ducentos*”; which word, however, did surprise another scribe of the Erfurt Chronicle, so that he read it “*educentes*”!

² “*Regina . . . esset.*”² Ibid. p. 282. ³ MS. *ab ipso* superfluously.

habuit episcopus Frisingensis, dominus Conradus in Heybs ipsi episcopo sibi confirmavit anno xii a confirmatione superius facta a Otakaro, rege Boemie, eandem confirmationem cedula sequenti roboravit.

*Rudolphus, Dei gracia Romanorum rex, semper augustus, uniuersis Romani imperii fidelibus in perpetuum, ne rei geste veritas calumpniata malicia pereat ex transcurso temporis euanescat, necessarium est eam scripture testimonio perhen-
nare. Hinc est, quod ad uniuersorum tam presencium quam eciam futurorum noticiam cupimus pervenire, quod nos Conradum, venerabilem Frisingensem episcopum, principem nostrum dilectum omnibus iuribus provinciali iudicio in Heybs attinentibus, quibus predecessor ipsius gauisus esse dinoscitur, volumus plene & libere congaudere. Ipsius provincialis iudicii homines ad iurisdiccione[m] & dominium memorati episcopi pertinentes ab exactionibus quibuslibet & vexacionibus indebitis ac tracionibus ad alienum forum videlicet provincialium nostrorum seu ciuitatum vel aliorum quorumque iudicum & subiudicum iudicium ad imitationem quondam ducum Austrie penitus eximentes, sic tamen quod in exemp-
cionis huiusdem iudicium tria talenta denariorum Wiennensium singulis annis nostre camere vel persone cui ipsam summam deputauerimus teneatur ex[s]oluere, quemadmodum predecessor ipsius episcopi ipsam summam | annuam quondam Ottoni comiti de Hardeke, qui dictum provinciale iudicium vnacum iudicio in Peilstain a ducatu Austrie obtinebat in feodum, exsoluebat. Huius rei testes sunt Fridericus venerabilis Salczburgensis ecclesie archiepiscopus, Petrus Patauiensis, Bertholdus Babenbergensis, Leo Ratisponensis, Dietricus Burcensis, Johannes Chymensis, Wernhardus Seccouiensis ecclesiarum episcopi. Et nos in huius rei perhenne testimonium, presentem cedulam serenitatis nostre sigilli munimine iussimus roborari. Datum Wiene anno Domini millesimo CCLXXVII, xv kalendas Junii, indiccione quinta, regni nostri anno quarto.*

Eodem anno Henricus¹ comes de Rotenek, Ratisponensis

¹ "Henricus . . . liberauit," (page 81, line 9). Extracted from Andreas of Ratisbon. *Chronicon Generale*, contained in H.S.'s MS. Clm. 351 (see Introduction, p. xlix).

ecclesie canonicus & archidiaconus, Ratisponensi ecclesie preficitur episcopus. Hic dictam kathedralem ecclesiam sancti Petri consumptam et destructam incendio & ab antecessore suo Leone episcopo re-edificari inceptam sumptuoso¹ opere, quod & materiam superabat, vt ad finem perducı posset, multis laboribus consumauit, & multa preciosa ornamenta eidem ecclesie dedit, & patrimonium suum, scilicet comitatum et castrum in Rotenek, cum pertinentiis suis Ludouico, duci Bauarie, vendit & ecclesiam a debitis liberauit.

Ipsa eciam anno, idus Septembris, rex Otakarus, cupiens filiam suam Deo potius quam homini desponsare, filiam suam / predictam, que debuit ducere filium regis Rudolphi in virum, reclusit in monasterio sancti Francisci cum magna solempnitate, vbi fuerunt v episcopi, cum qua & alie decem virgines sunt ingresse. Hoc facto suggestionē quorundam suorum inimicicias aduersus Rudolphum concepit Ottakarus, & eum per nuncios et litteras ad odium concitauit. Fol. 319

Anno Domini M^oCCLXXVIII^o princeps Ottakarus, A.D. 1278 qui & Przemisl, rex Boemie, predictas terras se resignasse dolens, quorundam suorum consiliis animatus, ipsas recuperare aut omnino perire decreuit. Vnde congregato exercitu procedit in Austriam, ipsam devastans incendiis & rapinis, transiensque de Lauensi districtu, aliquot diebus stetit in campis & inde vsque in Drosendorff proficiscens, castrum ibidem obsedit & per potenciam expugnauit. Romanorum vero rex Rudolphus sciens hoc, congregato bellatorum exercitu, Danubium transiens in metis Moraue se locauit cum auxilio regis Vngarorum. Iam rex Otakarus venerat in quodam monte nemoroso prope flumen Moraue, de aduentu regis Romanorum nil certi presumens. Qui rex Romanorum, missis exploratoribus induccione Milote de Dyedycz, qui contra regem Otakarum in corde rancorem gerebat antiquum & quem tamen ipse rex per totum marchionatum Moraue constituerat capitaneum, reperiens regem ipsum cum suis incautos existere, seque securos reputare, dicti regis appropinquans exercitui,

¹ MS. *sumptuose*.

Fol. 320

circumdedit eundem repente. Rex Otakarus vero, regem Romanorum cum exercitu copioso considerans advenisse & prodiciones multiplices esse factas per suos, / de quibus eum rex Romanorum *decepit, nichilominus presumens in sua fortitudine, non curans quomodo se Rudolphus munierat, sed omnia paruipendens, exercitum suum* ordinat, magna suorum potencia, qui nondum advenerant, nullatenus expectata, belli se committens euentibus, nec malum de Milota suo capitaneo suspicatus, et confisus de victoria, prelio se audacter ingessit. Tandemque congregiuntur exercitus & hincinde bellum committunt. Sed proditor ille Milota, beneficiorum immemor, declinans cum suis, regem suum in hoc belli discrimine dereliquit. Fit ergo pugne dure certamen, quibusdam Boemis cadentibus, quibusdam vero fugientibus a domino suo rege. Proster-nitur itaque rex & capitur, et tandem in die [sancti]¹ Ruffi occiditur : de cuius tamen morte vehementer doluit rex Rudolphus. Sic ergo rex Boemie occisus Pragam ducitur et in Pragensi ecclesia honorifice sepelitur. *In gestis Morauorum dicitur, quod primum² sepultus est in Znoyma in monasterio fratrum Minorum, quod ipse edificauerat & postea [per] nobiles ac consilio baronum de Boemia ibidem peractio an[n]iuersaria fiebat & solempnis apparatus cum prandio. Tunc nobiles sub prandio in currum ossa imposuerunt & cum magna pompa ad Pragensem ecclesiam de monasterio fratrum Minorum transtulerunt.*

Cui successit in regno suus filius Wenczeslaus, puer quinque annorum, de cuius tutela intromisit se Otto marchio Brandenburgensis, provt pater eius disposuerat adhuc viuens. Eodem anno xii kalendas Nouembris venerabilis pater dominus Johannes, Pragensis episcopus xxiiii, est mortuus, & sibi successit Pragensis prepositus, dominus Thobias, episcopus xxv^{tus}. Predictus rex Ottakarus memorie recolende fundauit monasterium sancte Corone,

¹ Clm. 476 has this word.

² This statement about the king's burial at Znoyma agrees with that of the Kronika Neplachova (E.F.R.B. iii, p. 477). Possibly this chronicle is what N.G. means by "*gestis Moravorum*."

ordinis Cisterciensis, dum viueret, & illud dotauit magnifice, sicut decet. Hiis temporibus Boemia pessime regebatur ; nam multi Saxones / et Theutonici, intrantes Fol. 321 Boemiam, incolas plurimum perturbarunt, vt dimissis propriis laribus nonnulli habitarent in siluis ; propter quod ex defectu agros colencium fames est facta in regno *sequenti anno, ita ut matres manducarent proprios filios. Sed & Rudolphus,¹ rex Romanorum, venit in Bohemiam cum magno exercitu & ibi omnia secundum velle suum ordinauit atque disposuit.¹* Fuit insuper dictorum Theutonicorum tyrannide Boemia multum lesa, necnon destructa sunt ecclesiarum pia loca tam diu, quousque per barones regni cum marchione Brandenburgense predicto habito consilio, Thobie, Pragensi episcopo, regni gubernacio fuit comissa, et eiectis inde Saxonibus & Theutonicis supradictis liberaretur ab eorum molestiis dictum regnum. *Eodem anno circa festum sancti Andree apostoli fuit congregacio cum exercitu regis Romanorum in Nurenberg post obitum Ottakari regis. In qua congregacione inter alios prelatos fuere precipui, videlicet dominus Fridericus, archiepiscopus Salczburgensis, dominus Henricus, episcopus Basiliensis, qui fuit frater Minor, dominus Rudolphus, episcopus Constanciensis, dominus Johannes, episcopus Chymensis, & dominus Henricus, episcopus Ratisponensis, cum ceteris aliis prelatiis ac nobilibus.*

Anno Domini millesimo CCLXXIX Henricus, dux A.D. 1279 Slesie, propter mortem dicti Otakari regis, ciuitatem Glacensem & castrum cum tota illa provincia possidendo vite sue temporibus occupauit. Nam viuentis prefato Otakaro inter eum & dictum ducem Slesie conceptum extitit et contractum, ut decedente duce predicto sine liberis masculis ducatus totus Slesie deberet ad regem & regnum Boemie devenire iure hereditario possidendus, et viceversa / post mortem Otakari regis prefatus dux Fol. 322 Slesie Glacensem ciuitatem et provinciam obtineret easdem. Ceterum Otto, prefatus marchio Brandenburgensis, tutor regis & regni Boemie, Cunegundem reginam cum rege iuvene Wenceslao de castro Pragensi in

¹ “*Rudolphus . . . disposuit.*”¹ Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 285.

nocturno tempore fecit in castrum Bozdez deduci, et, familiaribus Boemis ab ea cunctis seclusis, Saxones in familiares sibi adiunxit, faciens eam cum filio diligentius custodiri, prohibens licenciam exeundi de castro sine consensu burgrauii, provisionem in necessariis minutam sibi disponens. Et licet dominus marchio sepius per barones Boemie rogaretur, vt reginam prefatam cum eius filio Pragam remitteret conseruandos honestius et fouendos, ipseque facturum se promitteret, tamen nunquam hoc adimpleuit. Propter quod regina tunc oportunitate captata se reddituram promittens de burgrauii licencia, rege iuvene, filio suo, tunc in castro relicto, Pragam accessit ad Agnethem quondam filiam regis Boemie, regulam sancti Francisci vitamque monasticam obseruantem, fingens se abinde propter exequias quondam regis Otakari Morauiam transituram, ad ducem Nicolaum, filium naturalem dicti regis, per aliam viam devenit, atque mansit cum illo, marchione Brandenburgensi, Wenczeslaum iuvenem regem Boemie sub tutela sua annis plurimis conseruante.

A.D. 1280 *Anno¹ Domini M^oCCLXXX^o archiepiscopus Magdeburgensis cepit marchionem Misnensem cum pluribus Thuringie nobilibus.¹ Et Boemia sub malis tutoribus providebatur.*

A.D. 1281 *Anno Domini millesimo LXXXI^o, vi^o² nonas Marcii, beata Agnes, filia quondam Otakari primi, regis Boemie tercii, apud sanctum Franciscum in monasterio virginum in Domino feliciter obdormiuit & angeli[ci]s fulta presidiis ad eterna gaudia letanter intrauit, que fuit in religione xlvii annos.²*

DE VENCESLAO II^o

Fol. 323 Eodem / anno Domini MCCLXXXI^o Otto marchio Brandenburgensis, tutor Wenceslai regis Bohemie, missis suis satellitibus ad Pragensem ecclesiam, ad quam tam nobiles, quam alii homines res suas conseruan-

¹ “*Anno . . . nobilibus.*”¹ Extract from C.S.P.E.M., p. 286.

² “*vi nonas . . . annos.*”² Extract from the Latin Legend of B. Agnes (ed. W. W. Seton, p. 118).

das tempore guerrarum importauerant, effractis sacristie ostiis et cistarum, res huiusmodi fecit auferri. Quibus gestis dictus marchio postea considerans statum regni Boemie per alienigenas¹ deprauari cottidie, conuocatis baronibus regni ad concilium generale fecit edictum sub pena capitis, ut omnes Theutonici de regno exirent, quo facto spolia cessauerunt. In eodem eciam concilio de consensu baronum, gubernacionem regni comisit domino Thobie, Pragensi episcopo, et Theobaldo, iudici curie, qui tamquam viri prouidi exterminatis malefactoribus in toto regno pacem fecerunt; & tunc statim homines agros suos colere inceperunt, in viis & stratis atque campis sicut prius publice laborantes. De terra itaque Boemie predictus marchio exiens, promisit in certo termino Thobie episcopo & baronibus Wenceslaum regem ipsorum educandum vlterius se continuo redditurum, sed veniente termino quod promisit non tenuit, sed iuuenem illum multis adhuc temporibus in sua tenuit potestate.

Eodem² anno beata Agnes, filia Otakari primi, vi nonas Marcii feliciter in Domino obdormiuit apud sanctum Franciscum, sepulta per Bonagraciam generalem.² Item Sicilia a Karolo deficiens Petro³ Arrogonum deditur.

De fame.

Anno Domini MCCLXXXII^o, quoniam agri per A.D. 1282 regnum Boemie propter Theutonicorum tyrannidem aliquibus temporibus permanserunt inculti, fames validissima omnium victualium in regno Boemie multum deseuit. Accidit quod matres nonnulle materne affectionis oblite, pueros occiderent & eos eciam manducarent, et inde mortalitas seuissima consurrexit.⁴

Anno Domini MCCLXXXIII^o vii kalendas Januarii A.D. 1283 contigit, quod hiris mire pulchritudinis circumdans quasi

¹ MS. *aligenigenas*. But Clm. 476 "*alienigenas*."

² It will be noticed how N.G. here repeats what he has already given previously in other words. But this sentence is added in the margin.

³ MS. *Petri*.

⁴ At this point the *textus receptus* of Pulkava adds: "*Eodem anno [i.e. 1282] obiit Agnes beata apud Sanctum Franciscum, monasticam vitam ducens.*" But Clm. 476 has no such sentence.

Fol. 324

totam Pragensem ciuitatem, apparuit & inde quidam predixerunt euentum prosperum, asserentes, ut quemadmodum yris se opponens ymbribus restringit turbines tempestatum, sic omnipotens Deus gubernans incolas regni Boemie conseruaret a passionibus variis & pressuris. Item aliud signum apparuit nonas Aprilis eodem anno; nam stella super cornu lune visa est lucidissimis splendoribus relucere. Per hoc intelligebant sapientes aduentum sui principis Wenceslai, qui tunc tenebatur apud Ottonem. Cui ix kalendas Junii venienti barones, milites, clerici & layci totius ciuitatis Pragensis cum gaudiis occurrerunt, suscipientes eundem cum exultatione cordium in ymnpnis & canticis processionaliter cum suo episcopo supradicto, populo subsequente. Hic princeps, licet in annis esset infancie, animam tamen semper gessit senilem, timens Deum & honorans Domini sacerdotes. Sed nec est illud pretereundum silencio, quod prefatus Otto, marchio Brandenburgensis, quamvis duris precibus instanter et promissionibus factis per Pragensem episcopum & barones regni Boemie prius sepius peteretur, vt Wenceslaum regem redderet, dicti regni heredem, hoc tamen facere recusauit, nisi sibi triginta quinque milia marcarum argenti darentur, et nichilominus Budissinensis marchia cum quibusdam castris & ciuitatibus aliis in hereditatem & possessionem perpetuam traderetur. Quibus factis predictum restituit Wenceslaum. Sicque idem princeps, prout super describitur, Boemiam est reuersus, incolis regni multis grauatis tribulacionibus respiracionem per aduentum sui principis susipientibus gaudiosam. Ceterum in absencia iuuenis principis supradicti, baro quidam Boemie de genere Witkonidum seu de Rosenberg, dominus in Crumelaw, huius principis matrem, reginam Cunegundem, videlicet, adamauit, cum qua eciam contraxit matrimonium et ex ipsa filium genuit nomine Johannem, qui postea factus est Crucifer de domo Theutonica et comendator per Almaniam & Boemiam generalis. Demum regina predicta in tantum filium, principem Boemie, adhuc iuuenem circumvenit, ut baroni

predicto capitaneatum tocius regni comitteret, ipsumque extolleret super barones alios vniuersos. Vnde spiritu superbie intumescens despexit alios, suos autem extulit, nulli reddens iusticiam vel pacem procurans. Cuius vxor predicta est mortua postea & aput sanctum Franciscum in Praga sepulta. Nolens autem dictus baro videri condicionis vilioris, quam fuerat, sed, ut prius, nobilium sanguini commisceri, cum sorore regis Vngarie, professa in obseruancia regulari, contraxit coniugium, ex qua succedente tempore filium genuit, ad baptismum eius dominum suum, principem Boemie, & sororium suum, videlicet Vngarie regem, invitans. Princeps vero Boemie cognito, quod ipsum dictus baro ad huiusmodi convivium invitauerat fraudulenter, vtpote quia rex Vngarie & dux Wratislaue convenientes ibidem debuerant in suum interitum conspirasse, dictum baronem Zawi ad se vocatum in castro Pragensi fere per biennium tenuit vinculatum, cumque nullius humiliacionis signa princeps in eo perpenderet, ipsum iussit duci ad castrum Hluboky, alias Froburg, ut illud principi redderetur. Quod cum facere recusaret, ante castrum predictum pena capitis est peremptus. Et ab inde ductus in Wissebrod monasterium ordinis Cisterciensis, quod ipse fundauerat, ibidem traditur sepulture. Quo audito consanguinei & amici eius, relictis omnibus, mox fugierunt. Quibus dispersis, facta est pax & iusticia in Boemia et in Morauia. Rex autem Vngarie & dux Wratislaue supradicti, disponente Deo, post hoc vixerunt pauco tempore, quoniam primus gladio, secundus vero veneno defunctus est.

*Anno*¹ *Domini MCCLXXXIIII*^o *dominus Wernherus*, A.D. 1284 *archiepiscopus Moguntinus, obiit, qui Ottakarum regem & reginam coronauit, ut supra dictum est; & vacauit sedes per duos annos & tres menses,*¹ *& postea Henricus de Ysenach ordinis Minorum fuit.* /

Anno Domini MCCLXXXV Wenceslaus, heres regni A.D. 1285
Boemie, vnacum matre sua Cunegunde, (de cuius gestibus Fol. 325

¹ “*Anno . . . menses.*”¹ Quoted from C.S.P.E.M., p. 288. But N.G. adds “*qui . . . supradictum est.*” Cf. also C.N.G. (A.F. ii, p. 101).

et etiam morte necnon sepultura scribitur per anticipacionem supra), antequam esset humanis exempta, regem Romanorum Rudolphum, socerum suum, visitauit in Egra. Eodem anno fratres Heremitarum ordinis sancti Augustini in ciuitate Minori Pragensi domum receperunt de consensu Thobie, episcopi supradicti.

A.D. 1286 Anno Domini MCCLXXXVI, 3^o nonas Iulii Gutha, illustris filia Rudolphi, regis Romanorum, coniunx Wenczeslai secundi, principis Boemorum, desponsata sibi nouiter intrauit Boemiam cum maximo comitatu, et a clero & populo vniuerso cum gaudiis est suscepta.

A.D. 1287 Anno Domini MCCLXXXVII Wenceslaus, heres regni Boemie, congregata multitudine copiosa, Morauiam ingreditur et fortaliciis raptorum destructis reformataque pace Boemiam est reuersus.

A.D. 1288 Anno Domini MCCLXXXVIII natus est filius principi Wenceslao, qui appellatur Otakarus, sed ipse anno eodem moritur. Item eodem anno castrum Holenstein, in quo raptores fuerant, expugnauit. Item eodem tempore Sawischius, de quo narratur superius, matrimonium contraxit cum illa professa.

A.D. 1289 Anno Domini M^o CCLXXXIX dux Opuliensis Cazimirus predicto duci Wenceslao, suis heredibus Bohemie, et corone principatum et terras suas subdidit & submisit, prout confecte sunt littere huiusmodi sub tenore. Littera.

Magnifico et illustri domino suo, domino Wenceslao, serenissimo regi Boemie & marchioni Morauie, Caze-mirus,¹ . . . convocati, anno Domini millesimo CCLXXXIX, iiii idus Januarii, indiccione ii^a; et nos Theodricus, Dei gracia episcopus Olomucensis, rogati per dictum dominum Kazemirum presenti instrumento per magistrum Ambrosium, canonicum ecclesie nostre Olomucensis, nostrumque notarium, nostro nomine subscribi & sigillum nostrum fecimus appendi.

A.D. 1290 Anno Domini millesimo CCXC^o, cum, sicut supra

¹ E.R.B. ii, 628-630. Kazimir promises feudal fidelity to King Wenceslaus with the consent of and on behalf of his sons Boleslaus and Wladislaus.

dicatur, Wenceslaus predictus Gutham, filiam Rudolphi regis Romanorum, duxit¹ in vxorem & sororem suam Johanni, regis Rudolphi primogenito, coniugem tradidit vice uersa, pacta inter regem Otakarum, patrem suum, cum eodem Rudolpho concepta per amicitiam renouauit. Et contractus tempore dictus Rudolphus Wenceslao, principi Boemie, decem milia marcarum argenti assignauit in dotem, obligans sibi ciuitatem Egreensem cum tota eius provincia. Postea vero hoc anno dictus rex Romanorum ad Wenceslaum, generum suum, misit nuncios, volens ut Egram predictam sibi restitueret, propter quod Wenceslaus, princeps regni Boemie, cum coniuge sua predicta venientes ad Rudolphum propriis in personis, Egra retenta, regnum Boemie dictus Wenceslaus a Romanorum rege suscepit in feodum. Perpendens etiam idem Rudolphus tractatus olim factos inter regem Otakarum & Henricum, ducem Slesie, de quibus supra fit mentio, rationabiles & iustos existere, considerans nichilominus / quod principatus Slesie antiquissimis Fol. 330 temporibus instauratus per reges et principes olim Boemie et sub annua pensione, que principibus Boemie soluebatur, eisdem locatus extiterat, suis litteris autenticis tractatus huiusmodi roborauit, quarum litterarum tenor sequitur in hec verba :

Rudolphus, Dei gracia Romanorum rex, semper augustus, vniuersis sacri Romani imperii fidelibus presentes litteras inspecturis, gratiam suam et omne bonum. Vniuersitatis vestre noticie innotescat, quod nos ordinationem seu promissionem de terra & principatu Wratislaviensi & Slesie, que a nobis & imperio habentur in feodum, quam illustris quondam Henricus, dux Wratislaviensis noster princeps, cum illustri & preclaro Wenceslao rege Boemie, filio et principe nostro karissimo, videlicet quod idem rex Boemie in terra & principatu Wratislaviensi et Slesie, si ipsum Henricum ducem premori contingeret, sibi deberet succedere, iniisse dinoscitur & fecisse ratam habemus & gratam, eam de plenitudine potestatis regie confirmantes & dantes has

¹ MS. "*duxerit.*"

litteras nostras, sigillo nostro munitas in testimonium super eo. Datum Erfordie vii^o kalendas Octobris, indiccione iii^a, anno Domini millesimo CCXC^o, regni vero nostri anno xvii^o.

*Eodem*¹ tempore Lesko, dux Cracouie, olim dederat facultatem Griffine uxori sue, vt Cracouiensem ducatum legare posset post mortem mariti, cui vellet. Que Griffina ducatus tam Cracouie quam Sandomirie post mortem mariti Wenceslao, principi Boemie, legauit tamquam suo nepoti, propter quod magnates Cracouie et Sandomirie pro Wenceslao, Boemie principe, solempnes mittunt nuncios, eum sibi postulantes in ducem. Wenceslaus vero, negociis aliis arduis prepeditus, dominum Thobiam, Pragensem episcopum, mittit Poloniam, qui principis quo supra nomine possessionem huiusmodi ducatum apprehendit.¹ Quod eciam reges Boemie ius & vocem eligendi Romanorum regem antiquitus habuerunt & eleccio huiusmodi de iure pertineat ad eosdem, subscriptum priuilegium clarissime manifestat.

Rudolphus, Dei gracia Romanorum rex semper augustus, vniuersis sacri imperii fidelibus presentes litteras inspecturis, gratiam suam & omne bonum. Quanto² . . . clare recognoscimus, approbamus, & presencium testimonio profiteamur. Si quid autem diminucionis vel calumpnie, quod non credimus, circa premissa cauillose, maliciose, vel subdole posset opponi, supplemus de plenitudine nostre regie potestatis. In cuius rei testimonium presens scriptum maiestatis nostre sigillo fecimus comuniri. Datum Erfordie vi^o kalendas Octobris, indiccione tertia, anno Domini M^oCCXC^o, regni vero nostri anno decimo septimo.

Post lapsum vero non magni temporis dictus Henricus, dux Slesie, sine liberis masculis moritur, et per regem Romanorum tractatus predicti denuo roborantur per litteram, que sequitur in hec verba.

¹ "*Eodem . . . apprehendit.*"¹ Is not in the standard text of Pulkava, but it is in the Pulkava text of Clm. 476.

² E.R.B. ii, 652. Rudolphus, King of the Romans, recognises the right of Wenceslas and his heirs to take part in the election of the Emperor.

Rudolphus, Dei gracia Romanorum rex semper augustus, vniuersis sacri imperii Romani fidelibus presentes litteras inspecturis, gratiam suam et omne bonum. Licet¹ . . . conferenda. Si quid autem diminucionis seu calumpnie, quod non credimus, circa premissa cauilliose, maliciose, vel subdole posset opponi, supplemus de plenitudine nostre regie potestatis. In cuius rei testimonium presens scriptum nostre maiestatis sigillo fecimus comuniri. Datum ut supra.

Licet huiusmodi littere sub forma emanarunt predicta, tamen rex Boemie Wenceslaus predictus possessionem ducatus Wratislaviensis tunc non est adeptus realem. Item anno, quo supra, M^oCC^oXC^o, rex Wenceslaus ducatum Opaue, quem olim Przemisl, alias Otakarus rex, pater eius, creauerat et Nicolao, suo filio naturali, in insigne vasallium dederat, ut prefertur, ab eodem Nicolao repeciit, et ipso depulso pro se ducatum retinuit supradictum. Item predicta Griffina ad nepotem suum Wenceslaum, regem predictum, Pragam veniens, multis temporibus morata cum eo tandem diem suum clausit extremum, & in monasterio sancti Francisci Prage ecclesiastice traditur sepulture.

Anno Domini M^oCCXCI^o post diuisionem apostolorum die sequenti Rudolphus rex, egritudine confectus & senio, postquam ipsum Wenceslaus, princeps Boemie, cum coniuge sua Gutha, dicti Romanorum regis filia, visitassent in Erfordia (tandem processit in Franckfordiam ordinaturus de regno) moritur, transfertur in Spiram, & ibidem inter Romanos principes sepelitur. Item Wenceslaus, princeps Boemie, misit Thobiam, Pragensem episcopum, Cracouiam, ut pacem reformet. A.D. 1291

Anno Domini M^oCC^oXCII^o de partibus Polonie mittuntur nuncii ad principem Wenceslaum, qui ducatum Cracouie, de quo se dictus princeps nuper intromiserat, eferunt devastari; propter quod maximo congregato A.D. 1292

¹ E.R.B. ii, pp. 652, 653. Rudolphus grants to Wenceslas, King of Bohemia, all the fiefs vacant through the death of Henry, Duke of Wratislavia.

Fol. 333

exercitu Poloniam ingreditur in sue virtutis potencia copiosa, necnon marchionis Brandenburgensis Ottonis, qui venerat in auxilium ei. Cui duces occurrunt Polonie, pacem et concordiam postulantes. Et ibidem in Opuliensi ducatu predictus Wenceslaus a marchione Brandenburgensi militum cingulo insignitur. Procedens quoque ulterius Cracouiam ab vniuersis benigne suscipitur et que ad pacem sunt, per ipsum dispositis protinus ante / Širadum, alias Cziras, vbi Loketko se collegerat, fixit tentoria, et in die sancti Wenceslai capiens dictum opidum et Loketkonem cum nonnullis aliis principibus captiuauit, et regni Polonie negociis convenienter dispositis cum victoria ad regnum Boemie feliciter est reuersus. Eodem anno Adolphus, comes de Nassaw, in regem Romanorum eligitur, presertim Wenceslao, principe Boemie, procurante. Nam licet Wenceslaus sororem Alberti, ducis Austrie, puta dominam Gutham haberet in coniugem, quia tamen dux Austrie principem Boemie in terris sui dotalicii plurimum impediuit, inter eos hiis temporibus dissensio gerebatur.

A.D. 1293

Anno Domini M^oCCXCIII^o Adolphus, rex Romanorum, Misnam potenter ingreditur; cui princeps Boemie Wenceslaus vocatus per eum occurrit in Grumhaym, et premissis tractatibus solemnibus in vigilia beati Laurencii sponsalia contrahuntur inter filium regis Romanorum Rupertum & Agnetem, [Filiam] Boemie principis supradicti.

A.D. 1294

Anno Domini M^oCCXCIII^o Gutha, coniunx Wenceslai predicti, fecit pacem inter ipsum ab vna parte et Albertum ducem Austrie, fratrem dicte Guthe, parte ab alia. Eodem anno Gutha, filia Wenceslai predicti & Guthe, eius coniugis, adhuc infans moritur et in Aula Regia sepelitur. Eodem tempore Przemisl, Kalisiensis dux, contra voluntatem principis Boemie coronatur in regem Polonie, mandato sedis apostolice accedente, sed breui viuens tempore a suis occiditur. Princeps Wenceslaus predictus hiis etiam temporibus leges scriptas in Boemia

voluit obseruari.¹ *Et Alexius quidam pontificio iure consultus habitus est apud Wenceslaum ob hanc causam carissimus. Qui regi multa de Romanorum nobilitate locutus usque adeo animum regis illexit, ut Jutham, filiam predictam, admodum paruulam in clara Vrsinorum familia sponsalia cuidam matrimonio sponderit. Hinc secuta inter Vrsinos & Boemie reges amicicia que apud Matheum eiusdem familie cardinalem plurimi fuit, sed puella, ut premissum est, obiit. Is Matheus, rogatus a Wenceslao gencium Vrbeuetancium utroque iure consultum in Bohemiam misit Alexium, quo regnum sub leges reduceret. Sed barones Boemie propositum eius auertere studuerunt, / ne iuris invalescente rigore fructus, Fol. 334 quem tollere consueuerunt, ipsis amodo deperiret, quibus incerta eciam omnia lucrum est. Voluit quoque idem princeps in Praga generale studium instaurasse, sed remurmurantes nonnulli reprobi di[s]suaserunt.*

Anno Domini millesimo CCXCV^o, vi kalendas Marcii A.D. 1295 venerabilis dominus Thobias, Pragensis episcopus, moritur et in ecclesia Pragensi ante altare sancti Procopii sepelitur, post cuius mortem Gregorius, decanus Pragensis, eligitur in episcopum, qui per episcopum Olomucensem in Brunna kalendas Junii de mandato Maguntinensis archiepiscopi confirmatur. Item precedenti anno Celestinus papa humilitatis spiritu in vigilia Cecilie renunciavit papatui. Cui Bonifacius octauus successit, electus in vigilia Natiuitatis Domini, qui sextum decretalium compilauit. Hic Celestinus postea per papam Clementem quintum canonizatur sub anno Domini M^oCCC^oXIII^o.² Sed Bonifacius predictus, *cum octo annis & aliquibus mensibus sedisset, captus Anagnie & opprimitur, tandem Romam profectus ibidem moritur. Rex³ Adolphus hoc anno Thuringiam cum exercitu proficiscitur, et castrum Francken-*

¹ At this point in Clm. 476, viz., between “*obseruari*” & “*sed barones*” there is a curious marginal sign, as if to indicate that a copyist was intending to interpolate something. Was the sign made by the pen of N.G.?

² MS. reads MCCXIII. An obvious mistake.

³ “*Rex . . . relinquitur.*” (page 94, line 3). Based on C.S.P.E.M. pp. 313, 314.

stein obsidetur et in dedicionem recipitur. Demum in Cruczeburc aliud castrum properatur, quod similiter regi subditur, ubi miles de Bruberg loco regis ibi relinquitur.

A.D. 1296

Anno Domini M°CC°XCVI° Agnes, filia olim Otakari, soror autem Wenceslai predicti, quam habuit in coniugem Rudolphus, Rudolphi regis Romanorum filius, ex qua genuerat Johannem, ducem *Suevie*, Boemiam est reuersa, ibidem moritur et apud sanctum Franciscum ecclesiastice traditur sepulture.

Ipsa anno in media Quadragesima, Dominica Letare, in Thuringia conuenerunt advocati regis Adolphi et advocati Theoderici iunioris lantgrauii inopinate iuxta villam Eistenberg, committentesque prelium inter se acriter dimicarunt. Vnde factum est, ut interfectis omnibus equis et runcinis pedestres pariter convenirent, ubi tam viriliter certauerunt, ut quinquies ab invicem discederent, resumptoque spiritu prelium iterarent. Tandem homines lantgrauii cum conchis ferreis homines regis ab invicem retrahentes, ipsos captiuos abduxerunt. Quod audientes ciues de Gotha & ille de Bruberg, quem rex reliquit, in vnum coadunati suis venire in adiutorium cupiebant, sed vnus de prelio fugiens ipsos redire persuasit, cum tamen maturius suis in auxilium venire potuissent. Quem / postea ille de Bruberg usque ad mortem vapulando peremit.

Fol. 335

A.D. 1297

Anno Domini M°CC°XCVII° Wenceszlaus predictus etatis sue anno xxvi° in die Penthecostes, videlicet iiii nonas Junii, cum coniuge sua domina Gutha in Pragensi ecclesia per venerabilem dominum Gerhardum, Maguntinensem archiepiscopum, in regem Boemie sollempniter coronatur. Huius coronacionis immensis solempniis multi principes interfuerunt et diuersarum populi nationum, magnus quoque, sicut regiam decuit dignitatem, factus est nobilium apparatus. Post triduum autem iocunditatis predictae Gutha regina decubuit grauissime langwore correpta, et xiiii kalendas Iulii de hoc seculo emigrauit, et sepulta est in ecclesia Pragensi ante capellam sancti Martini, sed ad capellam sanctorum Symonis & Jude apostolorum in nouo choro Pragensi demum trans-

ata. Ex hac siquidem Gutha Wenczeslaus rex prefatus filium genuerat nomine Wenceslaum, qui fuit in regem Vngarie postea coronatus. Item ex eadem similiter genuit tres filias, Annam videlicet, que fuit Henrico, duci Karinthie et comiti de Tirolis, postea matrimonialiter copulata; Elizabeth, que postmodum fuit Johanni de Luczemburg, regi Boemie, tradita in vxorem *per patrem Henricum septimum imperatorem*; insuper Margaretham, que tradita fuit duci Wratislauie Boleslao.

Anno Domini M^o CC^o XCVIII^o ¹ Albertus, dux Austrie A.D. 1298 nonnullorum principum electorum suffultus presidio, contra Adolphum, regem Romanorum, consurgit ipsumque prope Wormaciam in loco, qui dicitur Hasenpul, *in die Processi & Marcelliani* in bello occidit. Constituens quoque post hoc multa prelia, *et loco eius regnavit*. Demum anno regni sui decimo a patruale suo Johanne predicto crudeliter est occisus.

Anno Domini millesimo CCXCVIII^o *quo supra circa festum Martini idem* Albertus, Romanorum rex, curiam celebrauit solempnem in Nurenberg electoribus & aliis principibus imperii presentibus, vbi tam amice regem Boemie Wenceslaum tractauit, quod pre ceteris ab eo diligi credebatur. Vnde ad maiorem regis Romani gloriam dictus rex Boemie in regali corona Romano regi predicto *suo sororio* in pincernatus officio ministravit, licet non teneretur de iure. Nam rex Boemie similiter ut princeps elector non regalibus insignitus in solempnibus curiis Romanis imperatoribus vel regibus debet in pincernatus officio ministrare. Quod autem actus huiusmodi ministerii Boemie regibus non debeat preiudicium generare, cum eum rex Boemie non fecerit / ex debito Fol. 336 sed amore sui sororii, clare huiusmodi tenor littere manifestat.

Albertus, Dei gracia Romanorum rex semper augustus, vniuersis sacri Romani imperii fidelibus presentes litteras

¹ So the MS., but Pulkava Chronicle gives date as 1296. Clm. 476 gives date, viz., 1296, and the passage immediately precedes the one beginning "*Agnes . . . sepulture*" (page 94, line 4).

inspecturis, gratiam suam & omne bonum. Sic nos decet¹ . . . comuniri. Actum & datum in Nurenberg, anno Domini millesimo CCXCVIII, xv kalendas Decembris, indiccione viii^a, regni nostri anno primo.

In prefata eciam Nurenbergensi curia Albertus, Romanorum rex, contractum empicionis et vendicionis ciuitatis Pirn et pertinenciarum suarum, necnon incorporacionis eius facte regno Boemie approbavit per suum priuilegium, quod sequitur in hunc modum.

Nos² Albertus, Dei gracia Romanus rex semper augustus. Ad vniuersorum noticiam tenore presencium volumus pervenire, quod nos vendicionem ciuitatis episcopatus Misnensis dicte Pirn cum castro & attinenciis suis site in terra Misnensi circa metas Boemie, factam per episcopum et capitulum Misnensem illustri Wenceslao regi Boemie duci Cracouie et Sandomirie marchionique Morauie principi et fratri nostro carissimo ac heredibus / eius, prout in litteris inde confectis & dictorum episcopi et capituli sigillis munitis plenius continetur, ratam & gratam habentes ei nostrum benigne prestamus assensum, et ordinamus atque statuimus, ut dicta ciuitas, quam ad preces dicti regis regno harum serie vnimus, vnitam esse volumus, et ad regnum ipsum de cetero debeat perpetuo pertinere. In cuius rei testimonium presentes litteras fieri & sigillo maiestatis nostre iussimus comuniri. Datum Nuremberg anno Domini millesimo CCXC octauo, x kalendas Decembris, indiccione viii^a, regni nostri anno primo.¹

Fol. 337

A.D. 1299

Anno³ Domini M^oCCXCIX rex Albertus cum filio suo Rudolpho ad Tholetum ad presenciam regis Francie properat, cum quo & archiepiscopus Moguntinus venit. Et tunc Rudolpho rex Francie sororem suam nomine Blancham in matrimonium tradidit, in presencia patris sui Alberti, regis

¹ E.R.B. ii, p. 782. Albert, King of the Romans, states that the Kings of Bohemia are not compelled to serve in the capacity of cupbearer.

² E.R.B. ii, p. 783.

³ "Anno . . . remeavit" (page 97, line 3). Based, but not verbally, on C.S.P.E.M., pp. 320, 321.

Romanorum, & nupciis peractis cum magna solempnitate in presencia principum & nobilium Alemannie ac Gallie ad propria remeavit. Sed Blanca, Rudolphi regis filii coniuge,¹ in breui defuncta, mansit viduus vsque post mortem Wenceslai, regis Boemie; et tunc accepit Elizabeth relictam, secundam uxorem Wenceslai, & factus est rex Bohemie per patrem suum, regem Romanorum, ut hic inferius lacijs explicabitur.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo² de mense Iulii, A.D. 1300
sex experti viri ad vocacionem domini Wenceslai, huius nominis secundi regis Boemie, veniunt de Florencia et in Montibus Chutnis ad mandatum regis nouas cudunt monetas, grossos Pragenses videlicet et paruulos, quorum duodecim grossum soluebant. Nan monete mutacio priscis temporibus incolis fuit dampnosa. Quod pius princeps debita consideratione perpendens, monetam huiusmodi fieri puram iussit.

Eodem anno sollempnes ad regem Wenceslaum predictum veniunt nuncii de Polonia suppliciter postulantes, vt cum rex Polonie Przemisl nuper debitum nature persoluerit, nullo herede relicto preter filiam Elizabeth, virginem illam in vxorem ducere dignaretur et, terras ac regimen Polonie suscipiens, eos ab inimicorum insultibus liberaret. Rex vero super hac materia communicato fidelium seruorum consilio, congregans exercitum in potencia virium copiosa / Poloniam ingreditur, pacis emulos Fol. 338
expugnat viriliter, regnum ipsum sue subiciens dicioni. Propter quod deinde procedens in Gnesnam, nobilibus illarum terrarum petentibus per Gnesnensem archiepiscopum in regem Polonie coronatur. Demum autem capitaneo constituto ibidem, domino Hyncone de Duba videlicet, nobili regni Boemie, feliciter est reuersus. Eodem anno versus Romam concurrit fidelium maxima multitudo, quoniam cunctis Christi fidelibus in hoc anno, qui iubileus fuit, plena peccatorum remissio de apostolice sedis clemencia est largita, *Bonifacio papa octauo presidente.*

¹ MS. *coniunx*.

² It is perhaps worth noticing that the word "*trecentesimo*" here written out in full, is likewise written in full in Clm. 476.

A.D. 1301

Anno Domini millesimo CCC primo, idus Septembris, Gregorius, Pragensis episcopus, moritur, cui dominus Johannes, filius Gregorii de Drazicz, Pragensis canonicus, in episcopatu successit. Eodem anno mortuo illustri Andrea, rege Vngarie, sine liberis veniunt solempnes nuncii de Vngaria, postulantes Wenceslaum, iuuenem filium dicti Wenceslai, regis Bohemie & Polonie, in regem Vngarie sibi dari. Nam dictus rex Bohemie consanguineus fuerat regis Andree, quia proauia sua soror eiusdem Andree fuit. *Hec asserit cronica Boemie, sed tu dic cum cronica¹ Vngarie, quia Otakarus, pater istius Wenceslai, habuit in uxorem Kunegundam, filiam domine Anne, filie Bele quarti regis Vngarie, & ista Kunegunda fuit mater Wenceslai secundi, qui fuit neptis Bele regis Vngarie.¹* Prehabitis itaque consiliis suorum nobilium, dictus rex Boemie filium suum predictum Wenceslaum, quem ex Gutha filia² Rudolphi Romanorum regis² genuerat, ut prefertur, eis dedit in regem. Quem suscipientes Vngari cum ingenti leticia ducunt Vngariam, ipsum in regem solempniter coronantes. *Ipsam³ Vngari Ladislaum vocauerunt.³*

A.D. 1302

Anno Domini M^oCCCII^o, xi kalendas Augusti Cune-gundis, soror regis Wenceslai secundi, religionem assump-sit apud sanctum Georgium in castro Pragensi, & facta succedentibus temporibus abbatissa monasterio multas obtinuit libertates.

A.D. 1303

Anno Domini MCCCIII^o die Penthecostes Wences-laue secundus predictus, rex Boemie sextus, Elizabeth, filiam Przemysl regis Polonie, quam uxorem duxerat, per venerabilem dominum Henricum, Wratislaviensem epis-copum, auctoritate Maguntinensis et Gnesnensis archie-piscoporum ad reginam Boemie et Polonie in ecclesia Pragensi coronari et consecrari solempniter procurauit. Hec regina post coronacionem / anno tercio peperit

Fol. 339

¹ "*Cronica . . . Vngarie.*"¹ Extract from C.H. p. 220. For discussion of this passage, see introduction, p. xxxiv.

² "*Filia . . . regis.*"² Ibid. p. 223.

³ "*Ipsam . . . vocauerunt.*"³ Ibid. p. 223.

filiam Agnethem nomine, [que] Henrico Swidnicensi & Jaurensi duci fuit succedente tempore matrimonialiter copulata.

Eodem¹ anno Bonifacio papa viii^o, v idus Octobris defuncto Rome xxv die a sua capcione, nono anno pontificatus sui, electus est xi kalendas Nouembris frater Nicolaus de Treuisio, ordinis Predicatorum, & Benedictus xi est nominatus, qui tantum octo mensibus & diebus xvii sedit; ex tunc vacauit sedes mensibus vndecim.¹

Anno Domini M^oCCCIIII^o Vngari futura minime A.D. 1304 preuidentes, fidelitatis & iuramentorum immemores, auxilio suo regi predicto Wenceslao iuueni denegato, alium, videlicet Karulum, filium Karoli, regis Sicilie, quem Bonifacius viii^s prius illis in regem assignauerat, sibi statuerunt in regem. Quo audito rex Wenceslaus, pater eius, magno exercitu congregato, procedit Vngariam et devastat eandem, destructaque ciuitate Strigoniensi vsque Budam progreditur et filio suo accepto *cum eo* Boemiam feliciter est reuersus.

Eodem anno Albertus, rex Romanorum, ad Wenceslaum, regem Boemie & Polonie supradictum, postquam videlicet Gutha, de qua supra fit mencio, defuncta fuerat, nuncios mittit terras Egram, Meissnam, Vngariam atque Poloniam petens ab eo, necnon volens vt de Montibus Chutnis per sex annos cederet vel octuaginta marcarum milia solueret de eisdem, tam pro annis preteritis quam futuris, asserens ad se ratione decimarum pro iure imperii summam huiusmodi pertinere. Cuius postulacionis instantie responsum extitit sic, quod nuncii ab eodem rege Boemie & Polonie vacui recesserunt. Vnde Albertus, rex Romanorum, cum exercitu copioso per Budweys intrauit Boemiam; sed & filius eius Rudolphus, dux Austrie, devastans hostiliter Morauiam est ingressus. Conuenientes quoque amborum exercitus demum circa Montes Chutnenses sunt castrametati. Ibidem vero ciues

¹ "*Eodem . . . vndecim,*"¹ Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 112). The passage down to "*diebus xvii*" is extracted from the Chron. of xxiv Gen. (A.F. iii, pp. 453, 454).

Fol. 340

inierunt consilium, ut hostibus transmitterent exenia per defluentem ibi fluuium deferenda. Cocta namque fuit confectio virulenta ex fulgine et purgamentis argenti et de sordibus latrinarum, que dicto fluuio fuit inmissa. Vnde hostes habunde cum equis suis potantes nonnulli sunt mortui subito & deleti. Hiis sic actis, interea rex Boemie iam collegerat vires belli per ciuitates quoque necnon campestria, Brandenburgensem et Missnensem marchiones statuerat cum quinque milibus pugnatorum in Hradischcz, et in eius finibus totam postmodum multitudinem ad Montem Chutnensem admouens, in crastinum cum rege Romanorum / et eius filio pugnaturus. Hoc audito rex Romanorum fugit cum filio necnon exercitibus eorundem. Vnde dicti Boemie regis [exercitus], necnon marchionum & ducum, qui venerant in auxilium regi predicto, cum ceteris sunt reuersi.

A.D. 1305

Anno Domini MCCCV^o ¹ in vigilia Penthecostes dominus Bertrandus,² Burdegalensis archiepiscopus, in Romanum pontificem est electus, qui tunc in Francia constitutus eleccioni de se facte consensuens, mandat cardinalibus ad se in Lugdunum venire, propter quod Romana curia translata fuerat in Auinionem. Hic papa Clemens quintus vocatus est.²

Eodem anno ix kalendas Iulii predictus Wenceslaus, rex Boemie et Polonie, postquam pridem monasterium Aule Regie fundauerat et cetera bona fecerat plurima, confectus iam senio et deficientibus viribus in Domino feliciter obdormiuit. Cui successit in regno filius suus et heres unicus Wenceslaus tercius, rex Boemie septimus, quem pater suus de Vngaria potenter eduxerat, ut prefertur.

Eodem anno, idem Wenceslaus, rex Boemie, Polonie & Vngarie, cum Fiola, filia Mesce, ducis de Teschin, iii nonas Octobris vinculum matrimoniale contraxit.

¹ Pulkava dates this event 1301.

² "*Bertrandus . . . est.*" ² Cf. C.N.G. (A.F. ii, 112) and Chron. xxiv Gen. (A.F. iii, 454, 455), with which it largely agrees. But in C.N.G. it is stated that the Pope summoned the cardinals to Avignon.

Anno Domini M^oCCCVI^o, idus Februarii rex Wenceslaus predictus sororem suam Annam virginem Henrico, duci Karinthie & comiti Tirolis, tradidit in vxorem. Interea dux Loketko mala plurima regi Boemie supradicto intulit. Ad cuius proteruiam edomandam idem rex Boemie congregauit exercitum, aduersus Cracouiam dirigens gressus suos. Cum vero rex ipse in Olomucz pervenisset et in domo decani Olomucensis maneret et estiuo tempore consisteret in palacio, sola indutus camisia & palio, quidam iniquitatis filius regem accessit insidias tanti hostis minime suspicantem, temporis huius oportunitate captata, dum videlicet apud eum nemo existeret, tribus vlnneribus [regem]¹ crudeliter sauciavit et statim aufugit. Et licet, dum hoc committeret ille flagicium, esset incognitus, quidam tamen miles, Conradus de Potestein, nacione Turingus, cultellum in manu baiolans cruentatum prosiliit de palacio, per illosque, qui foris extiterant, currere visus fuit, qui eciam per eos statim capitur et statim occiditur. Hic gloriosus rex ii^o nonas Augusti, etatis sue anno xviii^o occisus est, nullo herede relicto, et primo sepultus in Olomucz, sed demum translatus per sororem suam dominam Elizabeth, reginam Boemie, in monasterium Aule Regie supradictum.

Eodem autem anno post occisionem Wenceslai prefati pro / eligendo nouo rege tam nobiles regni quam ciues ad octauam Assumpcionis beate Virginis generaliter convocantur. In quo termino fit discors electio. Nam quidam in Rudolphum, Austrie ducem, filium Alberti regis Romanorum, alii vero in Henricum, ducem Karinthie, qui tunc personaliter affuit, dirigunt vota sua. Maior tamen pars, licet non sanior,¹ in *Henricum*,² *ducem Karinthie, ob hoc, quod seniore regni haberet filiam in vxorem, pro rege postulant, non obstante quod* sorores prefate flexis genibus coram omnibus nobilibus regni

¹ Supplied from standard Pulkava text, but it is also omitted in Clm. 476.

² Here N.G. departs from Pulkava, who says that the majority desired Rudolph, not Henry. N.G. has completely misunderstood the situation. It was Henry, whose sisters-in-law protested in vain !

Boemie publice supplicarent, ne hereditate sua, puta regno Boemie, priuarentur, producentes pro se imperialia documenta, quibus cauebatur. "Si quis regum Bohemie sine prole masculini sexus decederet, superstes filia eadem successione qua filius gaudere deberet, ne mortis occasio aliquando, dum non sunt filii, successionem regiam interrumpat." Vulgaris autem fauor clamorem concitat & *Henricum, ducem Carinthie*, regem petit, petitiones dictarum sororum contempnens. Porro Albertus, rex Romanorum, audito quod Wenceslaus, rex Boemie, filius sue sororis, suum diem clausisset extremum, potencia sui exercitus congregata regno Boemie appropinquat, et quod Rudolphus, filius suus, dux Austrie assumatur in regem affirmat. Venit ergo rex Romanorum ab vna parte et filius suus predictus ab alia, in Boemia sua tentoria collocantes. Vnde nonnulli barones et ciues Boemie potenciam patris & filii sapienciam aduertentes, Rudolphum, ducem Austrie, protinus elegerunt in regem. Quod videns Henricus, dux Carinthie, vnacum vxore sua Anna de Praga latenter recessit. Dux vero Rudolphus predictus Elizabeth, [filiam]¹ olim Przemisl regis Polonie, relictam vero regis Wenceslai secundi, sibi matrimonio copulauit. Item post obitum dicti regis Wenceslai tercii, Wladislaus, dux Siradie, pro se ciuitatem Cracouie et regnum Polonie tanquam Przemislai, quondam regis Polonie heres propinquior, detinuit. Sed & Otto, Bauarie dux, in regem Vngarie per Vngaros est electus, cum quo pretextu regni huiusmodi Karulus filius Karuli dicti Marcelli, Sicilie & Apulie regis dissensionis mouit materias et guerram. Tamen post discordiarum multos anfractus tandem regnum Vngarie Karulus obtinuit supradictus. /

Fol. 342
A.D. 1307

Anno Domini millesimo CCCVII quidam barones regni Boemie, puta Bauarus de Strakonicz, qui tenebat castrum in Clingenberg alias Swykw, et Wilhelmus de Hasemburg alias de Waldek, qui castrum tenebat in Burgeleyns alias Krziwoklat, cum suis se opposuerunt

¹ Clm. 476 has "*filiam*."

eleccioni Rudolphi, contra quos Rudolphus ipse cum exercitu copioso procedens Harauicz ciuitatem obsedit, sed tactus dissenteria nonas¹ Iulii vitam finiuit nullo herede relicto et in Pragensi ecclesia est sepultus. Pro cuius memoria regina Elizabeth supradicta in ecclesia Pragensi in honore beatorum apostolorum Symonis & Jude fundauit altare. Post predicta siquidem barones regni Boemie convenientes in ciuitatem Pragensem pro eligendo futuro rege in curia Pragensis episcopi tractatus faciunt. Inter quos quidam Dobeschius de Bechin nomine proposuit in presencia aliorum, *inducens eos*² ut Fridericum fratrem dicti Rudolphi, & filium Alberti Romanorum regis, in Boemie regem eligant. Sed tractatibus super hoc hinc inde habitis, tandem Vlricus dominus in Leuchtemburg de genere illorum de Ronow et quod dictus de Bechin extraneos voluit regno preficere, in hec verba prorupit: “O Dobeschi, quamdiu de genere hostium regum nostrorum vis in reges preficere?” Mox quoque idem Vlricus necdum verbis expletis gladio Dobeschium penetrauit in presencia baronum omnium, ipsum occidendo. Similiter & nepos dicti Vlrici dictus de Crussina, nepotem dicti Dobeschii crudeliter interfecit. Vnde in nobilium consilio clamor fit maximus “Australes nolumus, sed potius ad genus regium reuertamur.” Propter quod Henricum, ducem Carinthie, qui Annam, seniore filiam dicti Wenceslai secundi, habebat uxorem, elegerunt in regem. Idcirco nuncii ad ducem Henricum predictum mittuntur, et ut ad Boemiam festinanter redeat, invitatur. Sed audiens rex Romanorum Albertus Rudolphi, filii sui, mortem, proposuit alium filium suum Fridericum, ducem Austrie, promouere in regem Boemie. Transiens igitur nauigio de comitatu Habesburg in Sueuia, vbi tunc temporis morabatur, vltra flumen quod Bisa dicitur, per Johannem, filium quondam Johannis Rudolphi, ducis Austrie, senioris

¹ Pulkava states “*vº nonas.*” MS. leaves a small blank before *nonas*.

² Not in standard text of Pulkava, but in Clm. 476.

Fol. 343

[fratris dicti Alberti]¹ eo / quod idem rex Albertus, licet quondam Johannes dux Austrie, frater eius fuisset senior, tamen quia eodem Johanne fratre suo defuncto, filio eius Johanni predicto dare porcionem hereditariam denegauit, ab ipso occiditur. Vnde impleta est propheta primi ducis Przemisl, de quo superius fit mencio, qui dixerat "Postquam genealogia mea masculis defecerit, nepos vindicabit avum." Nam cum iste Johannes dux nepos fuerit Otakari vltimi, ut pote filius filie sue avum suum Otakarum vindicauit, videlicet interficiendo Albertum regem Romanorum, filium olim Rudolphi regis Romanorum, qui dictum Otakarum in bello, sicut predicitur, interfecit. Et nota quod antequam dictus Albertus, ut predicitur, est defunctus, anno predicto de mense Augusto electus est Henricus, dux Carinthie, in regem Boemie, ut prefertur, et rexit tribus annis sequentibus, et modicum in regno profecit, licet etiam ex Montibus Chutnensibus, cum tunc maioris vtilitatis habuerunt augmentum, thesauros multos acceperat, nichil tamen regno Boemie fecit comodi cum eodem, nec pacem populo procurauit. Attendens hoc Albertus, Romanorum rex, dum adhuc viueret, doluit vehementer, quod dux Henricus predictus regnum Boemie est adeptus, et exercitu copioso insimul congregato intrauit Boemiam et obsedit iterum Montem Chutnensem supradictum et ciuitatem Coloniam. Cui barones Boemie, puta Henricus de Lipa & Johannes de Wartemberg, viriliter restiterunt. Domina vero Elizabeth regina, [vxor] quondam Wenceslai, Boemie regis et postea Rudolphi Austrie ducis relicta, interim Grecz, Mutham, Chrudym, Policz et Jaromir pro dote habuit, et fouens partem Alberti, Romanorum regis, cum vna tantum ancilla plebeyo amicta vestitu de Praga latenter aufugit. Cui Fredericus, dux Austrie, circa Sderas occurrens, sciensque hoc ipsam ad castra sua perduxit, quia ciuitates predictas, videlicet Grecz, Mutam, et Chrudym dicto Romanorum regi apperuit. In quibus rex ipse propter hyemem disponens recedere,

¹ Not in Clm. 476. Supplied from standard text of Pulkava.

Sweuos & alios homines impios collocavit, qui regnum Boemie rapinis et pauperum oppressionibus innumeris vastauerunt. Cogitauerat siquidem predictus rex Romanorum in estate proxima cum multis gentibus se venturum / Boemiam et Boemis inferre dampnorum iniurias ampliores. Sed Deo permittente preuentus est morte, *anno Domini MCCCVIII^o*¹ et per Johannem prefatum, ut *prefertur*, occisus. Sui autem, quos reliquerat, de Boemia fugierunt *et Henricus rex permansit.*² Hic finis est primi libri huius cronice, quoniam presagium Przemisl, primi ducis Boemie, sicut supra dicitur, est impletum. /

Fol. 344

A.D. 1308

*Anno*³ *Domini M^oCCCX^o* fuit malus status in regno Boemie; nam propter iusticie inopiam facultates pauperum rapte fuerunt violenter; nec fuit, qui vidue aut pupillo de iusticia et iudicio responderet, et status regni fuit totaliter confusus, quia Karinthianus vocabat alienigenas ad terram in preiudicium terrigenarum & destruccionem. Et tunc temporis magnum disturbium & dissensio in Praga oriebatur, quia exercitus magnus de Carinthia advenit in subsidium sui ducis, et pauperes rebus suis sunt depredati, et multos in ore gladii occiderunt, diuersa mala violenter perpetraverunt. Misnenses eis eciam in adiutorium advenerunt & ipsi de Praga mane armati tamquam contra hostes pugnaturi cateruatim exiuerunt, de vespere vero redeuntes diuersa peccora & multa spolia pauperum reduxerunt, in circuitu ciuitatis & in villis sanguinem innocentem effuderunt.

Fol. 345

A.D. 1310

Johannes de Wartemberg et quidam alii nobiles cum exercitu suo Boemorum ante pontem castri Pragensis Carinthiano aspiciente in muris castri cum Carinthianis bellum comiserunt, & nostrates ipsos vicerunt, capitaneum exercitus cum aliis pluribus vlnnerantes captiuauerunt. Vnde predicti nobiles

¹ and ² Both these additions are neither in standard text of Pulkava nor in Clm. 476.

³ This section down to "*sponsus et sponsa*," p. 109, where N.G.'s hand ceases, is extracted from the continuation of the Chronicle of Cosmas, made by Francis, Canon of Prag, who carried Cosmas' narrative up to 1358. The whole section will be found in Capitula xxi & xxii, pp. 372-374, Emler, F.R.B. Vol. iv, but the continuation after "*sponsa*" inserted by Ceroni does not agree with the ending as given by the Canon.

statum regni cupientes emendare et oppressionibus pauperum et vocibus eorum lamentabilibus compacientes, miserunt ad regem Romanorum Henricum septimum de Luczelburg natum, postulantes & supplicantes, ut heres regni, virgo Elizabeth, filio primogenito Johanni matrimonialiter copularetur. Rex vero se difficilem reddidit ad hoc faciendum, verum tamen dominus Petrus, archiepiscopus Maguntinensis, describens studiose circumstantias regni Boemie, induxit regem ad consensum, ut virgo Elizabeth ad presenciam eius adduceretur, ut ipsam conspiceret, famam et mores indagando. Et ait rex : " Sacrum imperium, cui fauente Deo presumus, consuevit diuinarum legum & iusticie inviolabile armarium esse. Ab ipso enim omne iniustum est eminus elongandum, cum sit caput regnorum terrenarumque potestatum. Vnde|absque consilio fidelium minime velim quippiam attemptare vel aggredi. Verum tamen adducatur puella, ut ea conspecta cum consilio aduertatur, quid sit faciendum." Nunccii vero reuersi Boemiam, intencionem regis virgini & eius fautoribus narrauerunt. Vnde ipsi apud diuersos mercatores & ciues Pragenses virgini & eius familie ornamenta & alia necessaria nomine mutui procurauerunt. Et virgo Elizabeth supplicauit venerabili patri domino Johanni quarto, Pragensi episcopo xxvii°, ut ei equum ambulatorum ad viam donare dignaretur. Qui tribuit ei ambulatorum album bene expeditum et ornatum et duos ciphos argenteos, altos & magnos, auro decenter ornatos. Et infra sex dies post reditum nunciorum, cum decenti familia et congrua decencia ad suum exitum fuit expedita. Die autem vii°, hoc est xix kalendas Septembris de Praga palam est egressa, et cum coram rege comparuisset, ipse benigne eam suscepit et regina eciam fecit eam adducere ad suam presenciam, quam graciose pertractauit. Rex autem cum haberet tractatum de isto matrimonio cum suis principibus, quidam clam hoc impedire voluerunt, asserentes puellam non esse aptam neque dignam, et quod incole Boemie suum regem male conseruantes nostris temporibus perdiderunt. Ad hoc rex respondit : " In regno Boemie hactenus fuerunt reges potentes, quorum gloria partes mundi longinquas illustrauerat ; quomodo ergo potentes fuissent, si fidelem populum non habuissent ? "

Verumtamen rex propter verba illorum in ambiguitate et dubio permansit. Aduertens hoc prefatus dominus Petrus, Maguntinensis archiepiscopus, ait "Non indignetur mihi dominus rex super hiis, que sum loquutus. Antequam de manu filii vestri tale & tantum dimitteritis regnum, copulare filio vestro deberetis adhuc ignobiliorem virginem, quam ista est, vel matronam, que quinquagesimum attingeret annum." Hiis verbis & aliis pluribus rex finaliter ad consensum fuit inclinatus. Assignauit igitur rex nupciarum locum et tempus. Ab illo enim die, scilicet ab viii^o kalendas Augusti usque ad kalendas Septembris tempus veniendi in Spiram, imperialem ciuitatem illi puella, | filii nostri sponse, statuimus et finalem Fol. 347 terminum assignamus.

*Omnes discamus, in hoc alios doceamus,
Quantum sit mitis rex celi, qui quasi vitis
Florida dat fructum pellens, cum vlt, cito luctum.
Contra se bella timuit nimis ista puella
Atque gemens mente, gemino spoliata parente
Stabat turbata ; tamen est nunc letificata,
Cum sit adoptata regi, quasi filia grata.*

Cum vero rex Romanorum Henricus septimus vellet celebrare filio suo primogenito solempniter festa nupciarum et misit seruos suos & vocauit principes multos et comites & barones, et cum gaudio in Spiram pervenerunt, & ibidem mandauit rex, ut se & sua singuli habilitarent ad augendam gloriam illius festiuitatis, et precepit rex suis procuratoribus omnia necessaria aptari, sicut congruebat regie maiestati. Omnibus tandem apparatibus & indigenciis ad festum hoc celebre adaptatis & parietes domorum bissus & purpura vestiebat. Et audite sunt voces multorum dicencium : "Salus & honor & virtus & imperium sit tibi, rex noster, quia tu es rex pacificus & magnificus, et vltum tuum desiderat videre vniuersa terra." Clamabant quoque iuuenes & virgines, senes cum iunioribus, vna voce dicentes. "Vivat rex cum filio suo in eternum." Et fuit ibi conuiuium solempniter paratum. Rex cum principibus, regina cum sponsa et suis iocundissime epulabantur. Circa vero nonam diei illius horam rex coram principibus ait : "Regnum, ut consuluistis,

Fol. 348

Boemie Johanni, filio meo, confero. Ut autem ius forcius sibi competat, hodie sibi virginem, eiusdem regni heredem, legittime copulare matrimonialiter nos delectat. Et iusticia dictat, ut hoc regnum ab imperio in feodo accipiat aliorumque principum titulum ex hoc legaliter obtineat." Et verbum regis placet omnibus, quia prius fuit deliberatum. Et assumptis rex cunctis electoribus et principibus & aliis comitibus ad ostium ecclesie maioris in Spyra rex regalibus solempniter indutus vestibis venit, sceptrum habens in manu, sedebatque in solio in capite suo gestans auream | coronam. Et factus est repente sonus ex clamore letancium populorum et ex concursu et omni genere musicorum. Et venit filius cum maxima comitiua cum vexillis regni Boemie et facto per filium iuramento, sicut ceteri principes facere consueuerunt imperio sacro, ipse sibi regnum Boemie contulit et titulum et principis nomen & omnibus suis heredibus dedit legaliter et donauit et postea ipsum est osculatus. Dominus vero Johannes, Coloniensis archiepiscopus, premissis verbis ad matrimonium requisitis Johanni, regis filio, Elizabeth virginem in matrimonio legittime copulauit. Et in crastino dominus Petrus, Maguntinensis archiepiscopus, coram sponso & sponsa missam de sancto Spiritu solempniter cantauit, et munus benedictionis ab ipso susceperunt. Et ante prandium oriuntur verba contraria inter archiepiscopos, quis eorum deberet recumbere ad dexteram regis. Rex vero hec sapienter sedauit. De hiis vero archiepiscopis hoc tenetur: "Maguntinensis, Treuerensis, Coloniensis quilibet imperii fit cancellarius. Horum Maguntinensis per Germaniam, Coloniensis per Italiam, Treuerensis per Galliam archicancellarii titulum habet. Precedit autem Maguntinensis dignitate, Coloniensis potestate, Treuerensis antiquitate. Treueris autem longe fuit ante Romam." Et in hac imperiali & nupciali solempnitate milites, qui ad mensam ministrabant, precedentibus & precinentibus tubis, buccinis, tympanis, & choris, phaleratis dextrariis insidentes, quelibet fercula decentissimo ordine seruato apportabant. Transibat inter mensas conuiuarum validus armatus exercitus milicie preclare, qui ad conseruacionem leticie fuerat deputatus. In medio epulancium ante mensam erectum est vexillum, regni

Boemie habens signum. Decorabat has nupcias tanta diuiciarum deliciarumque gloria, sicut a multis temporibus [non]¹ fuit visa, regum Romanorum. Et post epulenta conuiuia [conuiujs]² innouantur solacia, diuersa cum diuersis. Alii quidem tripudijs, alii coreis, alii hastiludijs se exercent, et tota Spirensis ciuitas exuberanti resultat leticia et vox resonat leticie exultacionis. In illo autem tyrocinio hastas et teretes robustas, quas gestabant Boemi vibratas, cuncti | astantes Fol. 349 mirabantur. Sed alii de alia gente galeati contra eos equitare formidabant, et adventui Boemorum nullus se intraneus offerebat. Et si forsitan metas exiuerat incautus, ne venienti occurreret, de via equum reuertebat. Si vero quis obuius fuit tantum ictum haste pertulit, quod de equo cecidit, aut hasta in partes fuit confracta minutas. Hec facta sunt ad noue sponse gloriam & honorem, et ad vesperum benedictione preuia sponsus et sponsa se ad lectum contulerunt, ac more ueteri uitam duxerunt bonam, etc.

De Johanne X Rege Bohemiae.

Anno MCCCX Heinricus, Romanorum imperator, A.D. 1310 filium suum Johannem in Bohemiam solenniter introduxit. Quem tum primo Pragenses immiserunt et susceperunt.

Cum uero Heinricus, qui paulo ante Pragae diu commoratus esset, se spem inanem fouere uideret, rege conscio hinc cum coniuge sua discessit.

Sic anno MCCCXI mense Februarii rex Johannes una A.D. 1311 cum coniuge a Petro archiepiscopo in regem coronatus et firmatus est.

Anno MCCCXV Sueui ingenti cum exercitu hanc A.D. 1315 regionem intrare conabantur, qui secus ciuitatem Saacz omnes fere occisi sunt.

¹ "Non," which is essential to the sense, is supplied from the standard text of Pulkava. It is significant that it is also omitted in Clm. 476.

² MS. *communis*.

APPENDIX

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list does not profess to be a complete Bibliography, but merely to indicate the principal works bearing on Nicholas Glassberger and upon his sources :

- Andreas von Regensburg. *Chronicon generale*. Edited (1) by Pez in *Thesaurus Anecdotorum Novissimus*, Tom. IV, Pars III, 1723 ; (2) by G. Leidinger, Quellen und Erörterungen, Munich. 1903. A.R.C.G.
- Analecta Franciscana*
Tomus II, Chronica Fr. Nicolai Glassberger. 1887 C.N.G. A.F. II
Tomus III, Chronica XXIV Generalium. 1897 A.F. III
Tomus IV and V, Bartholomaeus de Pisa. De Conformitate A.F. IV, V
- Annales Sancti Rudberti Salisburg.* Contained in P.SS. IX
- Annalista Saxo.* See Widukind
- Archivum Franciscanum Historicum.* Quaracchi A.F.H.
- Bursian, Gustav. Mittheilungen der Freiburger Alterthumsverein. 2 Heft
- Canaparius, John. *Vita S. Adalberti Episcopi.* Contained in P.SS. IV
- Chronica Fratris Jordani.* Edited by H. Boehmer. Collection d'Etudes et de Documents. VI. Paris. 1908
- Cronica Hungarorum*, otherwise *Chronicon Budense.* Edited by Josephus Podhradsky. Buda. 1838 C.H.
- Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis.* Edited by O. Holder-Egger. Contained in P.SS. XXX
- Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis.* Edited by F. X. Wegele. Contained in Thuring. Geschichtsquellen. 1 Bd. Jena. 1854 C.R.
- Chronicon Anonymi Monachi Reichenbachensis.* Edited by Œfelius in *Scriptores rerum Boicarum I.* 1763
- Cosmas. Edited by Dr. Rudolph Koepke. Contained in P.SS. IX
- Dudik, Dr. B. J. P. Ceroni's Handschriften-Sammlung. Brünn. 1850
- Ekkehard. *Chronicon Universale.* Contained in P.SS. VI
- Emler, Dr. Josef. *Fontes Rerum Bohemicarum* (Ac. Prague Nadáni Palackeho) Vol. III, *Kronika Neplachova* ; Vol. IV, Continuation of Cosmas to A.D. 1358, by Francis, Canon of Prague ; Vol. V, The Pulkava Chronicle F.R.B.
- Erben, K. J. *Regesta diplomatica.* 1855
- Erler. Matrikel der Universität Leipsig. 3 vols. 1895
- Erphesfurtensia, Monumenta.* Edited by O. Holder-Egger. *Scriptores Rerum Germanicarum.* Hannover. 1899. SS.R.G. Contains :
Cronica Minor Minoritae Erphordensis C.M.M.E.
Cronica S. Petri Erfordensis Moderna C.S.P.E.M.
- Gaguin, Robert. *De Origine et gestis Francorum. Lugduni.* 1497
- Gumpoldi Vita Vencezlai Ducis.* Contained in P.SS. IV
- Herbordi. Vita Ottonis Episcopi Bambergensis.* Contained in P.SS. XII
- Hermann [alias *Hermannus Gigas*, or *Martinus Minorita*]. *Flores temporum.* Contained in P.SS. XXIV ; also edited by J. G. Meuschen, Leyden, 1750 ; also by Eccard, in *Corp. Hist. med. aevi I*
- Hermannii Altahensis Annales.* Contained in P.SS. XVII H.A.A.
- Johannes de Plano Carpini. *De Tartaris.* Translation into French by Pierre Bergeron. Paris. 1634
- Lehmann. Mittelalterliche HSS. des K.B. Nationalmuseums zu München. 1916
- Leidinger, G. Andreas von Regensburg. München. 1903
- Leitschuh, F. Katalog der HSS. der königlichen Bibliothek zu Bamberg. Bamberg. 1897.
- Loserth, J. Ueber die Chronik des Minderbruders Nikolaus von Böhmen. Mitheil. des Vereins für Geschichte der Deutschen in Böhmen. Bd. XVI
- Ludovicus de Prussia. Trilogium animae.* Koberger. Nuremberg. 1498
- Œfele, A. F. *Scriptores rerum Boicarum.* 1763
- Oliger, Fr. Livarius, O.F.M. *De quibusdam operibus Fr. Nicolao Glassberger recens attributis.* A.F.H. XIII. 1920
- Ottonis Frisingensis Chronicon.* Contained in P.SS. XX and in Œfelius, *Scriptores rerum Boicarum I*

- Pickel, Dr. G. Geschichte des Barfüßerklosters in Nürnberg. Beiträge zur bayerischen Kirchengeschichte. Bde. XVIII und XIX. Erlangen. 1912
- Pope Pius II (Æneas Sylvius Piccolomini). *Historia Boemica*. Rome. 1475
- Rolevinck, Werner. *Fasciculus temporum*. Cologne. 1474
- Schmidt, P. *Das Chronikon MS. Saxonicum*, Balduin von Braunschweig und die *Chronica Anonyma*. Schweizer. Theolog. Zeitschr. XXXV. Zürich. 1918
- Schoettgen, C., and Kreysig, G. C. (*Altenburgi*. 1753-61. *Diplomataria et Scriptores Historiae Germanicae medii aevi*)
- Seton, Walter W. Blessed Agnes of Bohemia. Brit. Soc. of Franc. Stud. Vol. VII. 1915
- Stauber, Dr. Richard, and Hartig, Dr. Otto. Die Schedelsche Bibliothek. Studien und Darstellungen aus dem Gebiete der Geschichte. VI Band. Freiburg im B. 1908
- Urspergensium Chronicon, Burchardi Præpositi*. Contained in P.SS. XXIII U.C.
- Vincent de Beauvais. *Speculum historiale*. Basel. 1481
- Widukind. *Res Gestae Saxonicae*. Contained in P.SS. III

INDEX

THE INTRODUCTION has been fully indexed. In indexing the Text references have been confined to persons, places, and subjects of Franciscan interest, and to sources used by Nicholas Glassberger.

- Adalberti, S., Vita*, lii.
Agnellus Pisanus, xxv., xxvii.
 Agnes, Blessed, of Bohemia, xxv., xxvi., xxvii., xxix., xxxv. —xxxvii., li., 5, 6, 40, 41, 50, 51, 84, 85.
Albertus Magnus, 64.
 Althaus, Hermann, Abbot of, xlviii., 3, 6, 27, 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 49, 51, 53, 55, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 75.
 Amberg, xiii., xiv., xvii., xix., xxxi., xlv., lvi.
Andreae, Johannis, Glossa, liii.
 Andreas von Regensburg, xlv., xlviii., xlix.
 Andreas von Regensburg, Works of: *Catalogus Episcop. Ratis.* xlviii.; *Chronicon Generale*, xlviii., 55, 65, 71, 80; *Diarium Sexennale*, xlviii.
 Anna, Founder of Poor Clares in Wratislauia, 5.
Annales Erpbesfordenses Lothariani, xlv.
Annales Sancti Rudberti, xlviii.
Annalista Saxo, xlvii., xlviii.
Auctarium, xlv., xlv.
 BALDWIN of Brunswick, l.
 Bâle, University of, xiv.
 Bamberg, xvii., xlv.; Royal Library of, xvii., xxxv.—xxxvii.
 Bartholomew of Pisa: *Liber Conformitatum*, liii.
 Bela, King of Hungary: Burial in Convent of Friars Minor, 71, 77.
 Beneschau Fragments, li., 39, 41, 64.
 Beneschau, Friars Minor of, 64.
 Berg, xix.
 Bernardine, St., of Sienna, xix.
 Berthold of Ratisbon, xxv., xxvii., 52.
 Bihl, Fr. Michael, xxxvi.
 Bœhmer, H., xiii., xv., xvi., xxi., xxii., xxxiii., xlii., xlviii., xlix., l., li., lvii., 39, 41, 64.
 Bohemia, Geographical description of, xxxii., xxxiii., 1, 2.
 Bonagracia, Minister General O.F.M., 85.
 Brixen, xix.
 Bursian, Gustav, xi., xx.
Calendarium emortuale Div. Francisci Noribergensis, xiii.
 Canaparius, John, lii.
 Caroli, Nicholas, xix.
 Charles IV., xxxi.
Christophorus de Varisio, Expositio Regulae, lv.
Chronica Anonyma, l.
Chronica Hungarorum (ed. Thwrocz, 1488), xxxiv. n.
 Chronicle of the Franciscan

- Order (A.F. II.), xxi., xxiii., xxxv., xxxvi., xlvii., xlix., liii., liv., lv., lvi., 18, 35, 36, 39, 40, 41, 42, 47, 52, 53, 67, 69, 70, 71, 75, 76, 87, 99, 100.
- Chronicle of the XXIV. Generals (A.F. III.), xxi., xxii., xxiv., xxvi., xxvii., xlix., liv., lv., lvii., 41, 52, 63, 99, 100.
- Chronicon Budense*, xxxiv.
- Chronicon Reichenbachense*, xlv., xlv.
- Clares, Poor, Nuremberg, xvii., xx., xxix., xxxvi., liv.
- Clares, Poor, Prague, 6, 40, 50, 76, 81, 84.
- Clares, Poor, Wratislauia, 5.
- Clare, Saint, Death and Canonization of, 52, 53.
- Constancia, Queen, xxxii., 3, 5, 8, 41.
- Conventuals and Observants, xix.—xx.
- Cosmas, xxxvii., xxxviii., 44, 55.
- Cosmas, Continuation of, xxxix., 105—109.
- Cronica Hungarorum* (? Clm. 442), xxxiv., xxxv., xlix.
- Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis*, 3, 4, 5, 6.
- Cronica Vngarie*, xxxiv.
- DAVID of Ratisbon, xxv., xxvii.
- Dudik, Dr. B., xxviii., xxxvii., xlv.
- Dürer, A., xv., xvi., xviii.
- ECCARD: *Comp. Hist. med. aevi*, lii.
- Eger, xix.
- Ekkehard: *Chronicon Universale*, xlv., xlv.
- Elizabeth, Saint, xxxvii., 3, 34, 38, 39, 40, 71.
- Emler, Dr. J., xxviii., xxix., xxxiii., xxxix., lvi., 3, 18, 29, 31, 55, 82.
- Ennsdorf, xvii.
- Erben: *Regesta Diplomatica Bohemica*, 13, 15, 22, 23, 26, 32, 35, 36, 67, 88, 90, 91, 96.
- Erfurt and Reinhardsbrunn Chronicles, xxxix.—xliv., including: *Cronica Minor Minoritæ Erphordensis*, 6, 18, 36, 38, 45, 69, 75; *Cronica S. Petri Erfordensis Moderna*, 6, 8, 11, 12, 17, 24, 26, 27, 31, 32, 38, 42, 56, 63, 75, 76, 77, 79, 83, 84, 88, 93, 96; *Cronica Reinhardsbrunnensis*, 3, 4, 5, 6.
- Erfurt, Friars Minor of, 56.
- Erler, x.
- FLAGELLATORS, 64.
- Flores Temporum*, li.
- Fontes Rerum Bohemicarum*, xxviii., xxxix., lvi., 3, 18, 29, 31, 55, 82.
- Fraknoi, Editor of *Cronica Hungarorum* (1900), xxxiv.
- Franceschina*, lv.
- Francis, Canon of Prague, xxxix., 105—109.
- Francis, Saint, Foundation of Order of Friars Minor, 6; Stigmatization and Death, 35.
- Freiberg, x., xi., xx.
- GAGUIN, Robert: *De Origine et Gestis Francorum*, liii.

- Gebehard, Bishop, Chaplain of, xxxviii.
- Geschichte des Barfüßer-klosters in Nürnberg [Pickel], xix.
- Glasberch, Ieronimus, *de Friberga*, x., xi.
- Glasberg, Nycolaus, *de Lesnicz*, x.
- Glasberg, Stephen, x.
- Glaseberg, Johannes, *de Friberga*, x., xiv.
- Glasperck, Christophorus, x.
- Glassberg, Lodewicus, *de Friberg*, x.
- Glassberg, Nicolaus, *de Friberg*, x.
- Glassberger, Nicholas, Date and place of birth, ix., 1; Reception into Franciscan Order, ix.; Possible education at Leipsig University, ix.-xi.; Association with Hartman Schedel, xii.-xiii.; At Bâle, xiv.; At Amberg, xiv.; At Nuremberg, xiv; His use of Schedel MSS., xiv.; His relation to the Humanistic influences, xv.-xvii.; Possible contact with St. John of Capistrano, xxvii.; His recension of Chronicle of XXIV. Generals, xxi., xxii; His handwriting, xxii.; His edition of *Trilogium Animae*, xxiii.; His Chronicle of the Franciscan Order, xxiii.; His *Maior Cronica Boemorum Moderna*, xxv.-xxix.; Works attributed to him, xxix.; His dedication of the *Maior Cronica*, xxix., 1; His sources, xxx.-lix. [For individual sources used, *see* under title of each source.] Question whether he was Confessor of Poor Clares at Nuremberg, lix.; His death, xiii.
- Glassperg (Glossperck), Nicolaus, *de Friberga*, x.
- Gonzaga, xxiv.
- Gonzaga, John, di Vescovado, xxix.
- Gonzaga, John Francis, Marquis of Mantua, xxix.
- Griffo, Friar, liv.
- Gumpoldi, *Vita Vencezlavi Ducis*, lii.
- HARTIG, Dr. Otto, xii., xiv., xxxiv., xlix.
- Hegius, Alexander, xviii.
- Helias, benefactor of Friars Minor of Prague, 65.
- Henricus de Ysenach*, 87.
- Henry III., Emperor, Signmanual of, xxxviii.
- Herbord: *Vita Ottonis*, lii.
- Hermann of Altaha, xlvi., 3, 6, 27, 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 49, 51, 53, 55, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 75.
- Hermann of Bamberg, xix.
- Hermannus de Pelestyn, Confessorium Casuum*, lvii.
- Hermannus Gigas*, otherwise *Januensis*, li., lii., 68, 69.
- Hess, Andreas (of Ofen), xxxiv.
- Holder-Egger, O., xxxix.-xliv., xlvii., lii.
- Hueber, *Fortunatus*, xxiv.
- Hugolino, Bishop of Ostia [Gregory IX.], Protector of the O.F.M., 27.

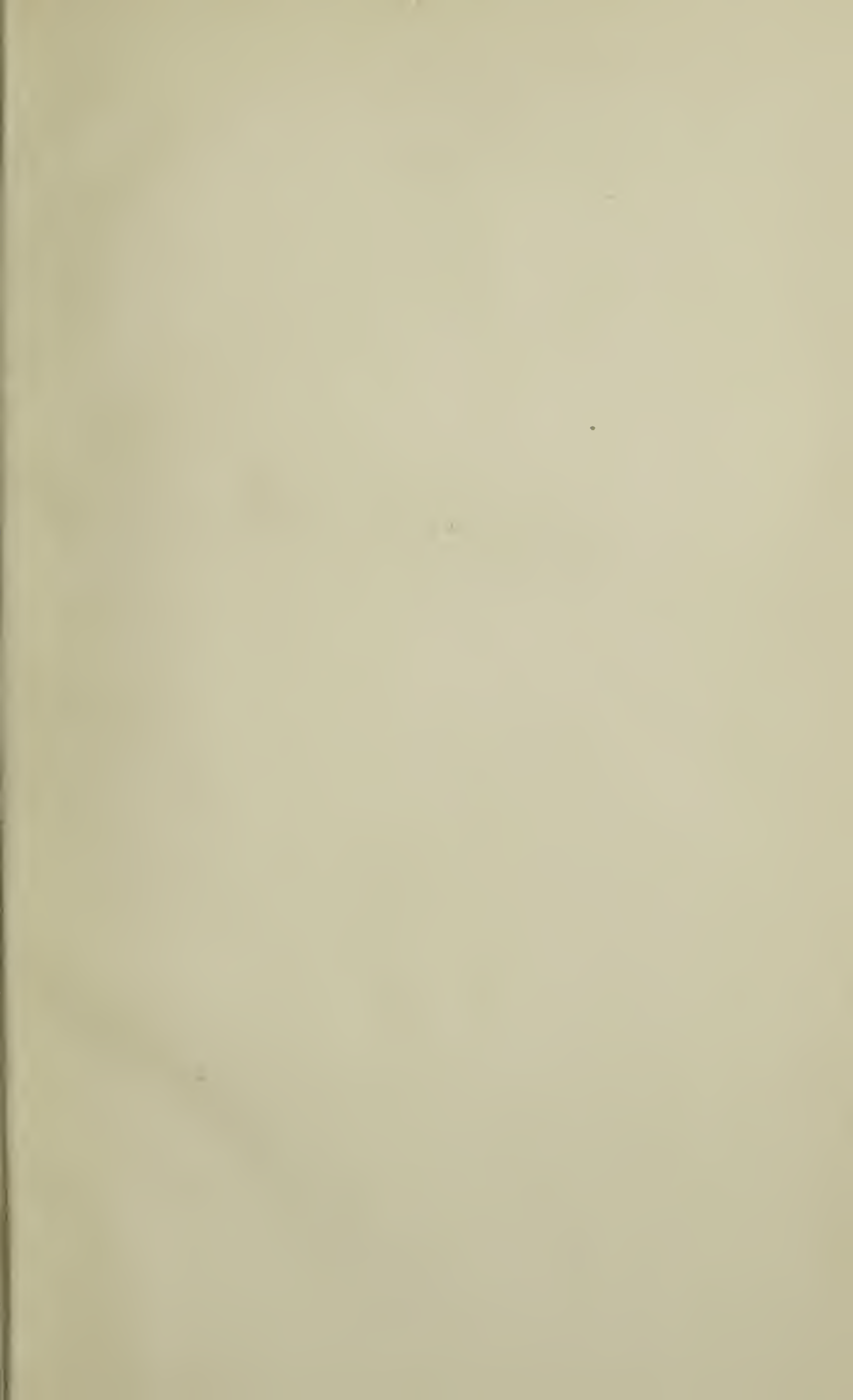
Humanism; xv.
Hungary, Andreas, King of, xxxiv., 98.
Hungary, Wenceslas, King of, xxxiii., xxxiv., 98.
Hungarorum Cronica, xxxiv., xxxv.; xlix., 71, 75, 98.
Hungary, Bela IV., King of, xxxiv., xxxv., 98.
Hungary, Anne of, xxxiv., xxxv., 98.
Hussites, N.G.'s condemnation of, 1.
Hystoria Friderici imperatoris magni, xlvii.
Jacobus de Porta, liv., lv.
Jacobus Odi Perusinus, lv.
Jacobus Philippus Bergomensis, xxiii.
Johannes de Plano Carpini: De Tartaris, lvi.; Holds chapter in Prague, 41.
John, St., of Capistrano, xix., xx., lv.
Jordani, Chron. Frat., xiii., xv., xxi., l., 35.
Koberger, Anton, of Nuremberg, xlv.
Koepke, Dr. Rudolph, xxxvii., xxxviii.
Krafft, xv.
LATERAN Council (1215), 18.
Lehmann, P., xxi.
Leidinger, G., xlix.
Leipzig University, Registers of, x., xii., xiv.
Loserth, J., xxviii.
Louis, Saint, of France, 32, 45, 47, 71-73.
Ludovicus de Prussia, xxi., xxiii.

MANUSCRIPTS :

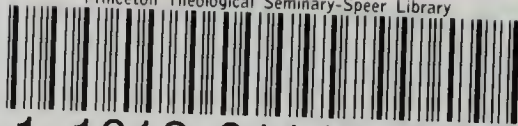
Bamberg, Misc. hist., 146, E. vii., 19. xxxv., xxxvi., 40
Brünn, Ceroni MS. 292. xi., xiv., xxv.-xxviii., xxx.-lix. *passim*.
Gotha, A., 92. xlv.
Hall MS. of Chronicle of XXIV. Generals. xxii., xxvii., xxviii., xxxv., liv., lv.
Hannover XIII., 753. xl., xli., xlii.
Karlsruhe, 357. l.
Maior Cronica Boemorum. xiv., xv., xxi., xxv.-xxix., xxx.-lix.
Munich :
Clm. 351. xlv., xlix., 80.
Clm. 400. xiv.
Clm. 442. xxxiv., xxxv.
Clm. 476. xiv., xxx.-xxxiii.
Clm. 516. xlvii.
Clm. 593. xli., xlii.
Clm. 626. xl., xli.
Clm. 901. xli.
Clm. 954. liii.
Clm. 11029. xxxvii.
Munich MS. of Chronicle of the Franciscan Order, xxiii.
Munich, National Bavarian Museum, No. 1191. xxix.
Nuremberg Staatsarchiv VI., 104-i. No. 3740. xvi.
Prague, Cod. 3c Metropol. Lib. lii.
Scheurl Bibliothek, Cod. 163. xxxiv., xxxv., xlix.
Strasburg MS. of Cosmas. xxxvii.
Vienna, National bibliothek, Cod. 13671. xxxvi.

- Mary Magdalene, Order of, liv.
Martinus Minorita, li.
 Meissen (Misnenses), x., xi., xii.
 Meuschen, Joh. Gerhard, li.
Monumenta Ordinis Minorum, lv.
 Müller, Johann [Regiomontanus], xviii.
 Munich, xiv. [See also under Manuscripts.]
- Neplachova Kronika*, lvi., 82.
 Neustadt, xix.
 Nicholas of Fara, xx.
Nicolaus de Auximo, lv.
Nicolaus de Lyra, lvii.
 Nordlingen, xiii.
 Nuremberg, *passim*.
 Nuremberg Chronicle, lvi., 76.
 Nuremberg, Germanisch Museum, xxxiv.
- OEFELE, *Script. rerum Boicarum* xvii., xlvi.
 Oliger, Père Livarius, xxi., xxvi., xxvii., xxix., li.
 Olmütz, xi., xx.
Ottonis Episcopi Bambergensis Vita, lii.
Ottonis Frisingensis Chronicon, xlvi.
- PADUA, University of, xiii., xvii.
 Papal Documents, 10, 17, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 32.
Paulus Waltherus de Güglingen : De Locis Terre Sancte, liv.
 Pelcel, xii.
- Pertz : *Scriptorum*, III. xlvii. ; IV. lii., liii. ; VI. xlv. ; IX. xlviii. ; XII. lii. ; XVII. xlviii., 3, 27, 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 49, 51, 53, 55, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 75 ; XX. xlvi. ; XXIII. xlvii., 3, 8, 17, 26, 27, 30, 34, 36 ; XXIV. lii. ; XXX. xxxix.
- Pez : *Thesaurus*, xlviii.
Piccolomini, Æneas Sylvius : Historia Boemica, xxx.—xxxiii.
- Pickel, Dr. G., xix.
 Pirckheimer, Charitas, xvi.
 Pirckheimer, John, xvi.
 Pirckheimer, Wilibald, xviii.
 Podhradczky, Josephus, xxxiv.
 Poland, Evangelization of, lii.
- Popes : Innocent III. 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18 ; Honorius III. 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 32, 35, 36 ; Gregory IX. 27, 36, 41, 42 ; Innocent IV. 43, 44, 51, 52, 54 ; Alexander IV. 54, 55, 58, 62, 63 ; Urban IV. xli., xlix., 63, 65 ; Clement IV. 66, 70 ; Gregory X. 75 ; Celestine V. 93 ; Boniface VIII. 93, 97, 99 ; Benedict XI. 99 ; Clement V. 93, 100 ; Pius II. (*Æneas Sylvius Piccolomini*), xxx.—xxxiii.
- Prague : Chapter of O.F.M. held at, 41 ; Convent of S. Francis, 6, 43, 51, 65, 76, 82, 87 ; Foundation of Franciscan Order, 39 ; Hospital of Crucifers, 6, 41, 50, 51 ; Poor Clares of, 6, 40, 50, 76,

- 81, 84 ; Relic of S. Nicholas brought to, 43.
 Prühl, xvii.
 Pulkava, Chronicle of, xxviii., xxx.-xxxiii.
- REICKE, Dr. E., xvi.
 Reinhardsbrunn. *See* Erfurt.
Res Gestae Saxonicae, xlvii.
Robertus de Licio, Tractatus de divina caritate, lvii.
 Rolewinck, Werner : *Fasciculus Temporum*, xxii., liii., liv.
 Rudolph of Hapsburg, lvi.
- Schedel, Anthonius, de Nuremberga*, xiii.
 Schedel, Hartmann : At Leipzig University, xii. ; Friendship with Nicholas Glassberger, xiii. ; At Padua University, xiii. ; At Nuremberg, xiii. ; At Nordlingen, xiii. ; At Amberg, xiii., xiv. ; At Nuremberg, xiv. ; His Manuscripts and their use by Glassberger, xiv.-xviii. ; References to Schedel MSS. and books, xxx.-xxxiii., xxxiv., xxxv., xxxviii., xl., xli., xlv., xlvi., xlvii., xlviii., xlix., liii., liv., lvi. ; His Nuremberg Chronicle, lvi.
- Schedel, Hermannus, de Nuremberg*, xii.
Schedel, Johannes, de Nuremberga, xii.
Schedelsche Bibliothek, xii., xiv.
Schilling, Johannes, lv.
 Schmidt, Philipp, Article by, l.
 Signatures of MSS., xxvii., xxviii.
- Speculum Fratrum*, lv.
Speculum vitae beati Francisci et sociorum eius, lvi.
 Stanislaus, Saint, Canonization of, 52, 53.
 Stauber, Dr. Richard, xii.
 Stoss, xv.
 Straganz, P. Maximilian, xxii., xxvii.
Strigonii (Esztergom), Friars Minor of, 71, 77.
- Tartaris, Liber de*, lvi.
 Thomas, Saint, of Canterbury, 27.
 Tobias, Fr., Founder of Beneschaw Friars Minor, 64.
Trilogium animae, xxi., xxiii.
 Trithemius, Abbot of Spanheim, xvii., xviii., xli., xlii.
- UNIDENTIFIED additions in
Maior Cronica, xxx.
Urspergensium Chronicon, xlvii., 3, 4, 8, 13, 17, 18, 26, 30, 34, 36.
- VINCENT de Beauvais : *Speculum Historiale*, liv., lvii.
 Vischer, xv., xvi.
- WADDING, L., xxiv.
 Walderbach, xvii.
 Wegele, F. X., Thüring
Geschichtsquellen, xlv.
 Widukind, *Res Gestae Saxonicae*, xlvii.
 William, Bishop of Paris, liv.
 Wohlgemut, xvi.
- Znoyma, Friars Minor of, 82.



Princeton Theological Seminary-Speer Library



1 1012 01145 7407

